
Chapter 1. Module 5: Transportation

Table of Contents

Objectives	2
Unit 1 Target List	3
Unit 2 Target List	6
Unit 3 Target List	8
Unit 4 Target List	10
Unit 5 Target List	12
Unit 6 Target List	14
Unit 7 Target List	16
Unit 8 Target List	18
Unit 1	20
References	20
Drills	33
Unit 2	61
References	61
Drills	71
Unit 3	98
References	98
Drills	108
Unit 4	129
References	129
Drills	138
Unit 5	161
References	161
Drills	170
Unit 6	202
References	202
Drills	213
Unit 7	234
References	234
Drills	244
Unit 8	266
References	266
Drills	279

Objectives

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the TRN Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the TRN Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Use the bus system: find out which buses go to a specific destination, at what times they leave, how often they run, where to buy tickets, where to change buses (if necessary), when the last bus of the day leaves, and where his stop is.
4. Take a taxi: hail one, tell the driver where to go, and use commands such as “hurry,” “slow down,” and “stop here.”
5. Use the train system: find out which trains go to a specific destination, at what times they leave, when and where to buy tickets, whether or not tickets are available for a train leaving on a specific date at a specific time, the distance to the destination, the duration of the train trip to that place, which platform the train leaves from, what to do with luggage, and whether or not the train has a dining car.
6. Take a plane: reserve a ticket for a certain date and time; find out whether or not the flight is direct, the duration of the flight, and traveling time to the airport; and arrange for transportation to the airport.
7. Describe in detail a trip (taken in the past or planned for the future): places visited (which places and what they are like), traveling companions, transportation for the trip, length of stay, number of previous trips to the same places.

Unit 1 Target List

1. Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?
到西門町去，坐幾路車？
What bus do you take to get to Ximénding?

Zuò Shíbālù.

坐十八路。

Take Number 18.

2. Shíbālù chē duō bu duo?
十八路車多不多？
Are there many Number 18 buses?

Bù hěn duō.

不很多。

Not very many.

3. Měi gé jǐfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē?
每隔幾分鐘有一班車？
How often is there a bus?

4. Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.
我每個星期六都去看電影。
I go to see a movie every Saturday.

5. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?
最後一班車是幾點鐘？
What time is the last bus?

6. Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?
這班車是不是去西門町？
Does this bus go to Ximénding?

Shì. Shàng chē ba!

是。上車吧！

Yes. Get on!

7. Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàosong wǒ.

到西門町的時候，請告訴我。

When we get to *Xīméndīng*, please tell me.

8. *Wǒ shì bu shì zài zhèlǐ xià chē?*

我是不是在這裏下車？

Is it here that I get off?

Bú shì. Xià yízhàn.

不是。下一站。

No The next stop.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

9. *shàng-*

上

last, previous (something)

10. *tóu-*

頭

first (something)

11. *gàosu*

告訴

to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for *gàosong*)

12. *shǎo*

少

to be few

13. *xià chē*

下車

to get off the bus; “Out, please!”

14. *yǒu(de) shíhou*

有(的)時候

sometimes

15. *chéng*

城

city

Unit 2 Target List

1. Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到展覽館有沒有直達車？

Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?

Měiyǒu. Zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dào Xīdān huàn chē.

沒有。坐一路車，坐到西單換車。

№ Take the Number 1 bus; take it to Xīdān and change buses.

2. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?

咱們在哪兒買票？

Where do we buy tickets?

Zài chēshàng mǎi piào.

在車上買票。

We buy tickets on the bus.

3. Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!

好，現在走吧。

Okay, let's go now!

4. Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?

誒！咱們不是坐過站了吧？

Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?

Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.

還沒呢。下一站才下車。

Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

5. Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

勞駕，十五路汽車站在哪兒？

Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?

Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushàng.

就在那個路口兒上。

It's (just) on that corner.

6. gōnggòng qìchē

公共汽車

public bus (local)

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. -li

裏

in (locational ending)

8. -shang

上

on

9. shàng bān

上班

to start work, to go to work

10. xià bān

下班

to get off from work, to leave work

Unit 3 Target List

1. Wǒ yào zuò jìchéngchē dào huǒchēzhàn qù.

我要計程車到火車站去。

I want to take a taxi to the train station.

2. Wǒ zhǐ yǒu zhè liǎngjiàn xíngli.

我只有這兩件行李。

I have only these two suitcases.

Hǎo, wǒ ba xíngli fàng zài qiánbian.

好，我把行李放在前邊。

Okay, I'll put the suitcases in front.

3. Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!

你開得太快了！

You are driving too fast!

4. Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.

他開車，開得不快。

He doesn't drive fast.

5. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, lái de jí.

我們有時間，來得及。

We have time. We can make it in time.

6. Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.

請慢一點開。

Please drive a little slower.

7. Bié kāi nàme kuài!

別開那麼快！

Don't drive so fast!

8. Qǐng nǐ zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tīng yíxià.

請你在前邊那個銀行聽一下。

Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.

9. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

不用找了。

Keep the change.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

10. chūzū qìchē

出租汽車

taxi (PRC)

11. lái bù jí

來不及

can't make it in time

12. qìchē

汽車

car, motor vehicle

13. zhè me

這麼

so, to this extent, in this way

14. zè nǎ me

怎麼

so, to this extent, in this way

Unit 4 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng qù Tánán wán jǐtiān.

我想去臺南玩幾天。

I'm thinking of going to Tainan to relax for a few days.

2. Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo e?

你說是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?

Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo. Dào Tánán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbian.

坐火車去好。到臺南去坐公路局不大方便。

It's better to go by train. To go to Tainan, it's not very convenient to take the bus.

3. Zuò huǒchē děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

坐火車得先買票嗎？

If I take the train, is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Nǐ zuìhǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.

你最好兩三天以前去買票。

It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.

Zuò Gōnglùjú ne?

坐公路局呢？

And if I take the bus?

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

不必先買票。

It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

4. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要做什麼時候的車？

What train do you want to take?

Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.

我要坐上午的車。

I want to take a morning train.

5. Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu màiwán le.

對不起，上午的票都賣完了。

I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. chuán

船

boat, ship

7. dìtiě

地鐵

subway (abbreviation for dìxià tiědào)

8. dìxià huǒchē

地下火車

underground train, subway

9. wán (wǎnr)

玩(兒)

to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself

10. -wán

完

to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)

Unit 5 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.

我想到南京去看看。

I would like to go to Nánjīng to look around.

Nǐ jìhua nǐtiān qù?

你計劃哪天去？

What day do you plan to go?

Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.

明天或是後天去都可以。

Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.

2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?

上海離南京有多遠。

How far is Shanghai from Nánjīng?

Yǒu liǎngbǎiwǔshíduō gōnglǐ.

有兩百五十多公里。

It's over 250 kilometers.

3. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?

坐火車要走多少時候。

How long does it take to go by train?

Yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.

要走四個半小時。

It takes four and a half hours.

4. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yìqián méi qùguo.

這是我第一次到南京去。以前沒去過。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before.

5. Bànge xiǎoshí gòu le.

半個小時夠了。

Half an hour is enough.

6. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望下午離開這兒。

I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Shīsāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yí tàng tèkuài.

十三點零五分有一趟特快。

There's an express at 1305.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. dāsuan

打算

to plan to

8. huòzhě (huòzhe)

或者

or (alternate form of huòshi)

9. yǐhòu

以後

afterwards, later on, in the future

10. zhōngtóu

鐘頭

hour (alternate word for xiǎoshi)

Unit 6 Target List

1. Huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

火車幾點鐘開？

What time does the train leave?

Shíbādiǎn wūshíwǔfēn fā chē.

十八點五十五分發車。

It departs at 1855.

2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.

請你把你的護照和旅行證給我。

Please give me your passport and travel permit.

3. Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

到上海取得車在第幾站臺？

On which platform is the train to Shànghǎi?

4. Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne. Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.

不用急。還早呢。你先在這個接待室休息休息。

No need to be anxious. It's still early. First, rest a bit in this waiting room.

5. Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnmé bàn? Shì bu shì kéyǐ náshàng chē qu?

我這件行李怎麼辦？是不是可以拿上車去。

What should I do about this suitcase of mine? May I take it onto the train?

Kéyǐ bǎ xíngli náshàng chē qu.

可以把行李拿上車去。

You may take the suitcase onto the train.

6. Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?

這班車有餐車吧？

This train has a dining car, I suppose?

Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.

有。有中餐，也有西餐。

Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food.

Hǎojíle.

好極了。

Great.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. bān

搬

to move

8. náshangqu

拿上去

to take up

9. náshanglai

拿上來

to bring up

10. áxiaqu

拿下去

to take down

11. náxialai

拿下來

to bring down

12. pǎo

跑

to run

13. wǎn

晚

to be late

14. yuètái

月臺

train platform (alternate word for [zhàntái](#), more common in Taiwan)

Unit 7 Target List

1. Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?
老宋，怎麼樣？忙呢？
Song, how are things going? Are you busy?

Bù zěnmé máng.
不怎麼忙。
Not especially busy.
2. Qǐng ni gěi wo dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào.
請你給我訂一張飛機票。
Please reserve a plane ticket for me.
3. Piào dìnghǎo le.
票訂好了。
The ticket has been reserved.

Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?
哪班飛機？幾點鐘起飛？
Which flight? What time does it take off?
4. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōuma?
這班飛機直飛廣州嗎？
Does this flight go directly to **Guǎngzhōu**?
5. Cóng Sānlitún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?
從三里屯到飛機場要多少時間？
How much time does it take to go from **Sānlitún** to the airport?
6. Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba?
如果我八點鐘離開家，來得及吧？
If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?
7. Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē wo, sòng wo dào fēijīchǎng qu.
請你派個車來接我，送我到飛機場去。
Please send a car to pick me up and take me to the airport.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. **hǎo le**
好了
to be satisfactorily completed
9. **lǚguǎn**
旅館
hotel
10. **shuōhǎo le**
說好了
to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
11. **xiǎnghǎo le**
想好了
to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
12. **yàoshi**
要是
if (alternate word for **rúguǒ**)
13. **zuòhǎo le**
做好了
to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished

Unit 8 Target List

1. Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?
好久沒見，您出門了吧？
I haven't seen you in a long time. You have been away, I suppose?
2. Nín wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù le ne?
您為什麼剛回來又去了呢？
Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?

Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.
我這次到廣州去是因為我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。
This time I went to **Guǎngzhōu** because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.
3. Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.
我們有一年沒見了。
We had not seen each other for a year.

Tā qǐng wǒ péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.
她請我陪她一起去旅行。
She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.
4. Sānge yuè yǐqián tā hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.
三個月以前她還不知道能不能來。
Three months ago she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.
5. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?
你們都去過什麼地方？
What places did you go to?
6. Hángzhōu gēn Sūzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.
杭州跟蘇州真是漂亮。
Hángzhōu and **Sūzhōu** are really beautiful.
7. Yǒu jīhuì wǒ yào zài qù yíci.
有機會我要再去一次。
If I have the chance, I would like to go again.
8. Zhèixiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba?

這些地方你都去過了吧？

You have gone to all those places, I suppose?

Méi dōu qùguo.

沒都去過。

I haven't been to all of them.

9. huí guó

回國

to return to one's native country

10. huí jiā

回家

to come/go home

11. huíqu

回去

to go back

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

12. rènao

熱鬧

to be lively/bustling/noisy

13. yǒu yìsi

有意思

to be interesting

14. méi(yǒu) yìsi

沒(有)意思

to be uninteresting

15. suǒyǐ (suóyǐ)

所以

therefore, so

Unit 1

References

Reference List

- A: **Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?**
到西門町去，坐幾路車？
What bus do you take to get to **Xīméndīng**?

B: **Zuò Shíbālù.**
坐十八路。
Take Number 18.
- A: **Shíbālù chē duō bu duo?**
十八路車多不多？
Are there many Number 18 buses?

B: **Bù hěn duō.**
不很多。
Not very many.
- A: **Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?**
每隔多少時候有一班車。
How much time is there between buses?

B: **Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.**
每隔二十分鐘有一班。
There's one every twenty minutes.
- C: **Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.**
我每個星期六都去看電影。
I go to see a movie every Saturday.
- A: **Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?**
最後一班車是幾點鐘？
What time is the last bus?

B: **Shíyīdiǎn shífēn.**
十一點十分。
Eleven-ten.
十一點十分。
- D: **Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?**
這班車是不是去西門町？
Does this bus go to **Xīméndīng**?

E: Shì. Shàng chē ba!

是。上車吧！

Yes, Get on!

7. A: Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàosong wǒ.

到西門町的時候，請告訴我。

When we get to Xīméndīng, please tell me.

F: Hǎo.

好。

Okay.

8. A: Háiyǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?

還有幾站到西門町？

How many more stops are there to (before) Xīméndīng?

F: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.

下一站就是西門町。

The next stop is Xīméndīng.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

9. shàng-

上

last, previous (something)

shàng-

10. tóu-

頭

first (something)

11. gàosu

告訴

to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for gàosong)

12. shǎo

少

to be few

13. xià chē

下車

to get off the bus; "Out, please!"

14. yǒu(de) shíhou

有(的)時候

sometimes

15. chéng

城
city

Vocabulary

-bān	班	(counter for regularly scheduled trips of buses, planes, subways, trains, etc.)
chē	車	vehicle, bus, car
chéng	城	city
duō	多	to be many
-fēn	分	a minute
gàosong	告誦	to tell, to inform
gàosu	告訴	to tell, to inform
gé	隔	to separate, to divide off
jǐlù chē	幾路車	what number bus
měi-	每	every, each
shàng	上	to get on
shàng-	上	last, previous (something)
shǎo	少	to be few
tóu-	頭	first (something)
xià	下	to get off
xià-	下	next (something)
xià chē	下車	to get off the bus; “Out, please!”
Xīmēndīng	西門町	(an area of Taipei)
yǒu(de) shíhou	有(的)時候	sometimes
zhàn	站	a stop, a station
zuìhòu	最後	last, final (something)
(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)		
Běihǎi Gōngyuán	北海公園	(a famous park in Běijīng)
biéde shíhou	別的時候	other times
Dōngjīng	東京	Tokyo
fàng jià	放假	to close for a holiday
hǎowán	好玩	to “be fun (lit. , “good for relaxing”)
huì	會	will
sījī	司機	driver of a hired vehicle
zǒu ba	走吧	let’s go

Reference Notes

Notes on №1-2

- A: **Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?**
到西門町去，坐幾路車？
 What bus do you take to get to Xīméndīng?

B: **Zuò Shíbālù.**
坐十八路。
 Take Number 18.
- A: **Shíbālù chē duō bu duō?**
十八路車多不多？
 Are there many Number 18 buses?

B: **Bù hěn duō.**
不很多。
 Not very many.

Xīméndīng literally means “West Gate ding”—**dīng** being a Japanese term for “district.” **Xīméndīng** is the area of Taipei which surrounds the former west gate of the city. Today the district includes many shops, department stores, and movie theaters.

Lù is the word for “route.” The question **jǐlù?** asks for the route number of the bus.

Zuò, “to ride/to go by/to take [a conveyance]”:

Note

Zuò appeared earlier in **Zuò diàntī dào èrlou**, “Take the elevator to the second floor.

Here **zuò** (literally, “to sit”) means to go by some means of transportation which the passenger is inside of (e.g., car, plane, boat, train, bus, elevator—NOT a motor-cycle or a horse). In exchange 1, **zuò** is used as a main verb. It can also be used as a prepositional verb, as in

Nǐ zěnmē qù?
你怎麼去？
How are you going? (i.e., by what means of transportation)
Wǒ zuò huǒchē qù.
我坐火車去。
I am going by train.

” **Duō**, “to be many/much,” is an adjectival verb. There are several points to remember about **duō**:

Note

Adjectival verbs are one type of STATE verb. See BIO, Unit 6.

- a. Adjectival verbs are sometimes used before a noun to modify it (e.g., *xīn zhuōzi*, “new table”; *dà fángzi*, “big house”). However, when *duō* is used in this way, it must be modified, for example, by *hěn* or *tài*.

Tā mǎile hěn duō dōngxi.
他買了很多東西。
He bought a lot of things.
Běijīng jiēshang yǒu hěn duō cèsuǒ.
比較街上有許多廁所。
There are many toilets on the streets of Běijīng.

- b. Much more often, however, *duō* is used as the main verb of a sentence.

Nǐde shū zhēn duō!
你的書很多。
You really have a lot of books!
Jīntiān jiēshangde rén hěn duō.
今天的街上的人很多。
There are a lot of people out today, (literally, “on the streets today”) [16]

- c. Often it does not occur to students to use *duō* as the main verb of a sentence because in English they do not usually say “The students are many.” They would say “There are many students,” with “many” as an adjective preceding “students.” Compare:

Zhèrde rén hěn duō.
這兒的人很多。
There are a lot of people here.
Láide rén hěn duō.
來的人很多。
A lot of people came.

NOTE: *Shǎo*, “to be few,” is used in almost the same ways as *duō*. (See Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary.)

Notes on №3

3. A: Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yībān chē?
每隔多少時候有一班車。
How much time is there between buses?
- B: Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yībān.
每隔二十分鐘有一班。

There's one every twenty minutes.

Měi- is the word for “each,” “every.”

Gé is a verb meaning “to separate,” “to divide.” It is used for intervals of time between regularly occurring events (e.g., “every half hour”). In exchange 3, **gé** refers to the length of time between buses.

měi gé duōshao shíhou

每隔多少時候

(every divide-off [interval] how much time) “(every) how often”

The first sentence could also be translated as “How often is there a bus?” or “How often do the buses run?”

Example 1.1. Yìbān chē:

The counter **-bān** is used for scheduled trips, or runs, of a vehicle. **Yìbān chē** is one bus run.

Example 1.2. Èrshífēn zhōng:

The counter **-fēn**, for minutes, is usually followed by **zhōng**, “clock.” (**Zhōng** means “o’clock” in telling time.) “One minute” is **yīfēn zhōng**.

Měi	gé	èrshífēn zhōng	yǒu	yìbān	chē.
每	隔	二十分鐘	有	一班	車。
each	interval	twenty minutes	there is	one [run]	bus

“There’s a bus every twenty minutes.”

Notes on №4

4. C: **Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.**

我每個星期六都去看電影。

I go to see a movie every Saturday.

Měige: When used with a noun, **měi-** acts as a specifier and must be followed by a counter or a noun that does not require a counter.

měi(ge) rěn	每(個)人	every person
měizhāng zhuōzi	每個桌子	every table
měitiān	每天	every day

Dōu, “all”: Here the adverb **dōu** implies “each and every,” or “without exception”—“every Saturday, without exception.” When the subject of a sentence is specified by **měi-**, the following verb is usually modified by the adverb **dōu**.

Notes on №5

5. A: **Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?**

最後一班車是幾點鐘？

What time is the last bus?

B: Shíyīdiǎn shífēn.

十一點十分。

Eleven-ten.

十一點十分。

Zuihòu yībān chē: *Zui* is the word for “most,” or “-est.” *Zuihòu* means “latest,” or “last.” Note the order in which the elements of this phrase appear:

zuihòu	yì	-ban	chē
最後	一	班	車
last	one	run	bus

“the last bus”

Both the number and the counter are required in this phrase.

Compare:

tóu	yì	-ban	chē	“the first bus”
頭	一	班	車	
xià	yì	-ban	chē	“the next bus”
下	一	班	車	
shàng	yì	-ban	chē	“the last (previous) bus”
上	一	班	車	

(See Note on № 8 and Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary for *xià*-, “next”; *shàng*-, “last,” “previous”; and *tóu*-, “first.”)

Notes on №6

6. D: Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?

這班車是不是去西門町？

Does this bus go to *Xīméndīng*?

E: Shì. Shàng chē ba!

是。上車吧！

Yes, Get on!

Shì bu shì qù, “does it go to”:* The use of *shì bu shì qù* rather than *qù bu qu* in this sentence implies that the speaker has an idea that the bus does go to *Xīméndīng* and wants to make sure. (*Zhèbān chē qù bu qu Xīméndīng*? would also be correct.)

*For a discussion of the use of *shì bu shì* before another verb to form a question, see MON, Unit 5, notes on № 8.

Qù Xīméndīng, “go to *Xīméndīng*”: The destination directly follows the main verb *qù*. You now know two ways to indicate destination:

Wo dào Xīméndīng qù.	I am going to Xīméndīng.
我到西門町去。	
Wo qù Xīméndīng.	
我去西門町。	

The two forms are equally widely used.

Shàng chē: This verb has several meanings. In the Directions Module, the meaning was “to go up” in *Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mài ditúe*. In this exchange, the meaning of *shàng* is “to get on/in [a vehicle].”

Notes on №7

7. A: *Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàosong wǒ.*

到西門町的時候，請告訴我。

When we get to *Xīméndīng*, please tell me.

F: *Hǎo.*

好。

Okay.

Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou means “when we arrive in *Xīméndīng*.” If you want to say, in Chinese, “when [something happens],” add *-de shíhou* to the phrase which names the happening.

In English, “when” can mean either “during the same time” (e.g., “when I was a student”) or “immediately after” (e.g., “when the light turns green”). In Chinese, however, two different expressions are used for the two meanings: *-de shíhou* for “at the same time” and *yǐhou* for “immediately after.”

Wǒ zài Xiānggǎngde shíhou hěn xǐhuan qù kàn diànyǐng.

我在香港的時候很喜歡去看電影。

When [i.e., while] I was in Hong Kong, I liked to go to the movies very much.

Wǒ dào le Táiběi yǐhòu, mǎi le hěn duō Zhōngwén shū.

我到了臺北以後，買了很多中文書。

When [i.e., after] I got to Taipei, I bought a lot of Chinese books.

Notes on №8

8. A: *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?*

還有幾站到西門町？

How many more stops are there to (before) *Xīméndīng*?

F: *Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.*

下一站就是西門町。

The next stop is *Xīméndīng*.

Xià yízhàn: Here *xià* means “the next.” It is a specifier. *Xià* is usually followed by a numeral or a counter, as in the following examples:

xiàge yuè	next month
下個月	
xià yībān chē	the next bus
下一班車	

The phrase *xià yízhàn* contains no counter because *-zhàn*, like *-nián* and *-tiān*, is not used with a counter.

Notes on Additional Vocabulary

9.	shàng-	
	上	
	last, previous (something)	
10.	tóu-	
	頭	
	first (something)	
11.	gàosu	
	告訴	
	to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for <i>gàosong</i>)	
12.	shǎo	
	少	
	to be few	
13.	xià chē	
	下車	
	to get off the bus; "Out, please!"	
14.	yǒu(de) shíhou	
	有(的)時候	
	sometimes	
15.	chéng	
	城	
	city	

The specifier *shàng-*, “last,” “previous,” is used in the same patterns as *xià-*.

shàngge yuè	last month
上個月	
shàng yībān chē	the previous bus

上一班車

Tóu-, “first,” literally “head”: Let’s contrast **dì-** and **tóu-**: **Dì-** has no meaning of its own. Its function is to make a cardinal number into an ordinal number: for example, **sān**, “three,” becomes **disān**, “third,” as in **disāngē mén**, “the third door.” **Tóu-** has a meaning of its own: “first,” as in **tóusāngē mén**, “the first three doors.”

Tóu- is always followed by at least a number plus a counter (or a noun that does not require a counter).

tóuliǎngge rén	the first two people
頭兩個人	
tóusānběn	the first three volumes
頭三本	
tóusìtiān	the first four days
頭四天	

Notice that **tóuliǎngge**, “the first two,” and **dìèrge**, “the second one,” must use different words for “two,” because

tóuliǎngge	(COUNTING)
頭兩個	
dìèrge	(NOT COUNTING)
第二個	

Tóuyige, “the first one,” and **diyige**, “the first one,” are similar in meaning and often interchangeable.

Gàosu, “to tell”: **Gaosong** is the usual colloquial pronunciation in **Běijīng** speech. **Gàosu** is the usual colloquial pronunciation in many other places in China, including Taiwan. The fact that, in a Taipei setting, the first speaker in exchange 7 uses **gaosong** tells you that he is almost certainly not a native of Taiwan.

Shǎo, “to be few”: Most of the comments about **duō** in these Reference Notes (exchange 2) also apply to the adjectival verb **shǎo**. Most frequently **shǎo** is used as the main verb of a sentence.

Wǒde qián bù shǎo.
我的錢不少。
I have quite a bit of money.
Zài Táiwān méiyǒu gōngzuòde rén hěn shǎo.
在臺灣沒有工作的人很少。
There are few people in Taiwan who do not have Jobs.

One point deserves special attention: Although you may say **hěn duō shū** for “a lot of books,” you may not say **hěn shǎo shū**. **Hěn shǎo** can rarely modify a noun which follows—and neither can **tài shǎo**, **zhēn shǎo**, and related expressions.

Xià chē, “to get off [a vehicle],” may be used to signal that you wish to get off—that this is your stop. The expression would be translated as “Out, please,” or “Getting off, getting off,” used by passengers in crowded buses and elevators.

Yǒu(de) shíhou, “sometimes,” precedes the verb of a sentence, as other time expressions do.

Tā yǒude shíhou kàn Yīngwén bào.	He sometimes reads English newspapers.
他有的時候看英文報	
Wǒ yǒu shíhou zuò Shíbālù chē.	Sometimes I take the Number 18 bus.
我有時候坐十八路車。	

Originally, **chéng** meant “city wall.” This early meaning still affects modern usage: you must say “going **Into** the city,” not just “to the city.”

Tā jīntiān dào chénglǐtōu qù.	He is going to the city today.
他今天到城裏頭去。	

Vocabulary booster

Modes of Transportation

bicycle	[Běijīng] zìxíngchē	自行車
	[Táiwān] jiǎotàchē	腳踏車
boat	chuán	船
motorboat	qìtǐng	汽艇
rowboat	huátǐng	划艇
sailboat	fānchuán	帆船
sampan	shānbǎn	舢舨
bus	gōnggòng qìchē	公共汽車
coach (long-distance)	chángtú qìchē	長途汽車
car (automobile)	qìchē	汽車
	chēzi	車子
	chē	車
helicopter	zhíshēngfēijī	直升飛機
horseback riding	qí mǎ	騎馬
jeep	jípǔchē	吉普車
motorcycle	mótuōchē	摩托車
plane	fēijī	飛機
jet	[PRC] pēnqìshì fēijī	噴氣式飛機
	[Táiwān] pēnshèshì fēijī	噴射式飛機
	[Táiwān] pēnshèjī	噴射機
subway	dìxiàtiě	地下鐵

	dìtiě	地鐵
	dìxià huǒchē	地下火車
taxi	chūzū qìchē	出租汽車
	[PRC] chūzū chē	出租車
	[Táiwān] jìchéngchē	計程車
train	huǒchē	火車
trolley	diànchē	電車
truck	kǎchē	卡車
walking	zǒu lù	走路

Drills

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到西门町去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to Xīméndīng?

Cue hasn't yet

Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā hái méi gàosu wǒ.

到西门町去，坐几路车，他/她还没告诉我。

He/she hasn't yet told me what bus to take to get to Xīméndīng.

2 Dào Wǔguānchù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到武官处去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to military attaché's office?

Cue has already

Dào Wǔguānchù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā yǐjīng gàosu wǒ le.

到武官处去，坐几路车，他/她已经告诉我。

He/she has already told me what bus to take to go to the military attaché office.

3 Dào Nánjīng Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到南京路去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to Nánjīng road?

Cue did not

Dào Nánjīng Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā méi gàosu wǒ le.

到南京路去，坐几路车，他/他告诉我。

He/she did not tell me what bus to take to go to Nánjīng road.

4 Dào Zhōngshān Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到中山路去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to Zhōngshān road?

Cue hasn't yet

Dào Zhōngshān Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā hái méi gàosu wo le.

到中山路去，坐几路车，他/她还没有告诉我。

He/she hasn't yet told me what bus to take to get to Zhōngshān road

5 Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到西门町去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to Xīméndīng?

Cue has already

Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā yǐjīng gàosu wo le.

到西门町去，坐几路车，他/她已经告诉我。

He/she has already told me what bus to take to go to Xīméndīng.

6 Dào tā jiā qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到他/她家去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to his home?

Cue hasn't yet

Dào tā jiā qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā hái méi gàosu wo le.

到他/她家去，坐几路车，他/她还没有告诉我。

He/she hasn't yet told me what bus to take to get to his home.

7 Dào cài shì chǎng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到菜市场去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to the market?

Cue did not

Dào cài shì chǎng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā méi gàosu wo le.

到菜市场去，坐几路车，他/他告诉我。

He/she did not tell me what bus to take to go to the market.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Zuò Shíbā lù chē.

坐十八路车。

Take the Number 18 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Shíbā lù chē, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐十八路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 18 bus?

2 Zuò Yī lù chē.

坐一路车。

Take the Number 1 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Yī lù chē, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐一路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 1 bus?

3 Zuò Shí lù chē.

坐十路车。

Take the Number 10 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Shí lù chē, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐十路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 10 bus?

4 Zuò Liù lù chē.

坐六路车。

Take the Number 6 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Liù lù chē, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐六路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 6 bus?

5 Zuò Wǔ lù chē.

坐五路车。

Take the Number 5 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Wǔ lù chē, kě yǐ bu kě yǐ?

请你告诉我，坐五路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 5 bus?

6 Zuò Qī lù chē.

坐七路车。

Take the Number 7 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Qī lù chē, kě yǐ bu kě yǐ?

请你告诉我，坐七路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 7 bus?

7 Zuò Shí èr lù chē.

坐十二路车。

Take the Number 12 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Shí èr lù chē, kě yǐ bu kě yǐ?

请你告诉我，坐十二路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 12 bus?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

- 1 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?
每隔多少时候有一班车?
How often is there a bus?

Cue èrshífēn zhōng
二十分钟
20 minutes

Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.
每隔二十分钟有一班车。
There's a bus every 20 minutes.

- 2 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?
每隔多少时候有一班车?
How often is there a bus?

Cue shífēn zhōng
十分钟
10 minutes

Měi gé shífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.
每隔十分钟有一班车。
There's a bus every 10 minutes.

- 3 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?
每隔多少时候有一班车?
How often is there a bus?

Cue wǔfēn zhōng
五分钟
5 minutes

Měi gé wǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.
每隔五分钟有一班车。
There's a bus every 5 minutes.

4 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

bāfēn zhōng

八分钟

8 minutes

Měi gé bāfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔八分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 8 minutes.

5 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

èrshífēn zhōng

二十分钟

20 minutes

Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔二十分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 20 minutes.

6 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

shíwǔfēn zhōng

十五分钟

15 minutes

Měi gé shíwǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔十五分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 15 minutes.

7 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

shíèrfēn zhōng

十二分钟

12 minutes

Měi gé shíèrfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔十二分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 12 minutes.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1 Shíbálù chē duō bu duo?

十八路车多不多？

Are there many Number 18 buses?

Cue

èrshífēn zhōng

二十分钟

20 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔二十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 20 minutes.

2 Yìlù chē duō bu duo?

一例车多不多？

Are there many Number 1 buses?

Cue

wǔfēn zhōng

五分钟

5 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé wǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔五分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 5 minutes.

3 Dào Táinán qùde chē duō bu duo?

到台南取得车多不多？

Are there many buses to Táinán?

Cue

wǔshífēn zhōng

五十分钟

15 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé wǔshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔五十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 15 minutes.

4 Dào Jǐlóng qùde chē duō bu duo?

到隆市取得车多不多？

Are there many buses to Jǐlóng?

Cue

sìshífēn zhōng

四十分钟

40 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé sìshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔四十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 40 minutes.

5 Shíù chē duō bu duo?

十路车多不多？

Are there many Number 10 buses?

Cue

shífēn zhōng

十分钟

10 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé shífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 10 minutes.

6 Sānlù chē duō bu duo?

三路车多不多？

Are there many Number 3 buses?

Cue

èrshiwǔfēn zhōng

二十五分钟

25 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé èrshiwǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔二十五分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 25 minutes.

7 Èrlù chē duō bu duo?

二路车多不多？

Are there many Number 2 buses?

Cue

shíwǔfēn zhōng

十五分钟

15 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé shíwǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔十五分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 15 minutes.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

Táizhōng

Qǐngwèn, dào Táizhōng qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到台中那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Táizhōng?

2 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到台南那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Táinán?

3 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Jīlóng

基隆

Jīlóng

Qǐngwèn, dào Jīlóng qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到基隆那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Jīlóng?

4 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue Jiāyì
嘉义
Jiāyì

Qǐngwèn, dào Jiāyì qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到嘉义那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Jiāyì?

5 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue Táiběi
台北
Táiběi

Qǐngwèn, dào Táiběi qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到台北那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Táiběi?

6 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue Huālián
花莲
Huālián

Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到花莲那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Huālián?

7 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到高雄那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Gāoxióng?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:10

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn shífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点十分。

№ The last bus is at 11:10.

2 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:30

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn bàn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点半。

№ The last bus is at 11:30.

3 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 12:00

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíèrdiǎn.

不是。最后一班车是十二点。

№ The last bus is at 12:00.

4 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:40

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn sishífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点四十分。

№ The last bus is at 11:40.

5 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 12:10

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíèrdiǎn shífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十二点十分。

№ The last bus is at 12:10.

6 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:00

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点。

№ The last bus is at 11:00.

7 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 10:50

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shídiǎn wǔshífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十点五十分。

№ The last bus is at 10:50.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

- 1 Zhèibān chē dào Xīméndīng qù ma?
这班车到西门町去吗？
Does this bus go to Xīméndīng?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?
这班车是不是去西门町？
Does this bus go to Xīméndīng?

- 2 Zhèibān chē dào Zhōngshān Běilù qù ma?
这班车到中山北路去吗？
Does this bus go to Zhōngshān Běilù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zhōngshān Běilù?
这班车是不是去中山北路？
Does this bus go to Zhōngshān Běilù?

- 3 Zhèibān chē dào Zhōnghuá Lù qù ma?
这班车到中华路去吗？
Does this bus go to Zhōnghuá Lù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zhōnghuá Lù?
这班车是不是去中华路？
Does this bus go to Zhōnghuá Lù?

- 4 Zhèibān chē dào Zìyóu Lù qù ma?
这班车到自由路去吗？
Does this bus go to Zìyóu Lù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zìyóu Lù?
这班车是不是去自由路？
Does this bus go to Zìyóu Lù?

- 5 Zhèibān chē dào Rénài Lù qù ma?
这班车到仁爱路去吗？
Does this bus go to Rénài Lù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Rénài Lù?

这班车是不是去仁爱路？

Does this bus go to Rénài Lù?

6 Zhèibān chē dào Nánjīng Dōnglù qù ma?

这班车到南京东路去吗？

Does this bus go to Nánjīng Dōnglù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Nánjīng Dōnglù?

这班车是不是去南京东路？

Does this bus go to Nánjīng Dōnglù?

7 Zhèibān chē dào Héping Xīlù qù ma?

这班车到和平西路去吗？

Does this bus go to Héping Xīlù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Héping Xīlù?

这班车是不是去和平西路？

Does this bus go to Héping Xīlù?

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

- 1 Tā xià chē le.
他/她下车了。
He/she got off the bus.

Cue Xīméndīng
西门町
Xīméndīng

Tā shì zài Xīméndīng xiàde chē.
他/她是在西门町下的车。
He/she got off the bus at Xīméndīng.

- 2 Tā xià chē.
他/她下车。
He/she is getting off the bus.

Cue Xīméndīng
西门町
Xīméndīng

Tā zài Xīméndīng xià chē.
他/她西门町下车。
He/she is getting off the bus at Xīméndīng .

- 3 Tā shàng chē le.
他/她上车了。
He/she got on the bus.

Cue Zhōngshān Běilù
中山北路
Zhōngshān Běilù

Tā shì zài Zhōngshān Běilù shàngde chē.
他/她是在中山北路上的车。
He/she got on the bus at Zhōngshān Běilù.

4 Tā shàng chē.
他/她上车。
He/she is getting on the bus.

Cue Héping Dōnglù
和平东路
Héping Dōnglù

Tā zài Héping Dōnglù shàng chē.
他/她在和平东路上车。
He/she is getting on the bus at Héping Dōnglù.

5 Tā xià chē le.
他/她下车了。
He/she got off the bus.

Cue Mínhēng Lù
民生路
Mínhēng Lù

Tā shì zài Mínhēng Lù xià de chē.
他/她是在民生路下的车。
He/she got off the bus at Mínhēng Lù.

6 Tā shàng chē le.
他/她上车了。
He/she got off the bus.

Cue Rénài Lù
仁爱路
Rénài Lù

Tā shì zài Rénài Lù shàng de chē.
他/她是在仁爱路上的车。
He/she got on the bus at Rénài Lù.

7 Tā xià chē.
他/她下车。
He/she is getting off the bus.

Cue

Zhōnghuá Lù

中华路

Zhōnghuá Lù

Tā zài Zhōnghuá Lù xià chē.

他/她在中华路下车。

He/she is getting off the bus at Zhōnghuá Lù.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Dào Xīméndīng qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到西门町请告诉我。

When we get to Xīméndīng, please tell me.

Cue

shíhou

时候

when

Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到西门町的时候请告诉我。

When we get to Xīméndīng, please tell me.

2 Dào Zhōngshān Běilù qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到中山北路请告诉我。

When we get to Zhōngshān Běilù, please tell me.

Cue

yǐqián

以前

before

Dào Zhōngshān Běilù yǐqián qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到中山北路以前请告诉我。

Before we get to Zhōngshān Běilù, please tell me.

3 Dào Nánjīng Dōnglù qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到南京东路请告诉我。

When we get to Nánjīng Dōnglù, please tell me.

Cue

shíhou

时候

when

Dào Nánjīng Dōnglùde shíhou qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到南京东路的时候请告诉我。

When we get to Nánjīng Dōnglù, please tell me.

Cue

shíhou

时候

when

Dào Zìyóu Lùde shíhou qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到自由路的时候请告诉我。

When we get to *Zìyóu Lù*, please tell me.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?

还有几站到西门町？

How many more stops are there to [before] Xīméndīng?

Cue xià

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.

下一站就是西门町。

The next stop is Xīméndīng .

2 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?

还有几站到西门町？

How many more stops are there to [before] Xīméndīng?

Cue 3

Hái yǒu sānzhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.

还有三站就是西门町。

Three more stops, and that's Xīméndīng.

3 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Zhōnghuá Lù?

还有几站到中华路？

How many more stops are there to [before] Zhōnghuá Lù?

Cue xià

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Zhōnghuá Lù.

下一站就是中华路。

The next stop is Zhōnghuá Lù.

4 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Nánjīng Dōnglù?

还有几站到南京东路？

How many more stops are there to [before] Nánjīng Dōnglù?

Cue 2

Hái yǒu liǎngzhàn jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù.

还有两站就是南京东路。

Two more stops, and that's *Nánjīng Dōnglù*.

5 *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīnshēng Nánlù?*

还有几站到新生南路？

How many more stops are there to [before] *Xīnshēng Nánlù*?

Cue *xià*

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīnshēng Nánlù.

下一站就是新生南路。

The next stop is *Xīnshēng Nánlù*.

6 *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Zìyóu Lù?*

还有几站到自由路？

How many more stops are there to [before] *Zìyóu Lù*?

Cue 2

Hái yǒu liǎngzhàn jiù shì Zìyóu Lù.

还有两站就是自由路。

Two more stops, and that's *Zìyóu Lù*.

7 *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Mínhēng Lù?*

还有几站到民生路？

How many more stops are there to [before] *Mínhēng Lù*?

Cue *xià*

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Mínhēng Lù.

下一站就是民生路。

The next stop is *Mínhēng Lù*.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

- 1 Tā dào Zhōngguo qù.
他/她到中国去。
He/she goes to China.

Cue měinián
每年
every year

Tā měinián dōu dào Zhōngguo qù.
他/她每年都到中国。
He goes to China every year.

- 2 Tā kàn Zhōngguo diànyǐng.
他/她看中国电影。
He/she watches Chinese movies.

Cue yuè
月
month

Tā měige yuè dōu kàn Zhōngguo diànyǐng.
他/她每个月都看中国电影。
He/she watches Chinese movies every month.

- 3 Tā dào Niū Yuē qù.
他/她纽约去。
He/she goes to New-York

Cue xīngqī
星期
week

Tā měige xīngqī dōu dào Niū Yuē qù.
他/她每个星期都到纽约去。
He/she goes to New-York every week.

4 Tā dào xuéxiào lái.
他/她到学校来。
He/she comes to school.

Cue tiān
天
day

Tā měitiān dōu dào xuéxiào lái.
他/她每天都到学校来。
He/she comes to school every day.

5 Tā mǎi Yīngwén zázhi.
他/她买英文杂志。
He/she buys English magazines.

Cue Xīngqīwǔ
星期五
Friday

Tā měige Xīngqīwǔ dōu mǎi Yīngwén zázhi.
他/她每个星期五都买英文杂志。
He/she buys English magazines every Friday.

6 Tā dào cǎishíchǎng qù.
他/她到采石场去。
He/she goes to the market.

Cue tiān
天
day

Tā měitiān dōu dào cǎishíchǎng qù.
他/她每天都到采石场去。
He/she goes to the market every day.

7 Tā kàn bào.
他/她看报。
He/she reads a newspaper.

Cue

tiān

天

day

Tā měitiān dōu kàn bào.

他/她每天都看报。

He/she reads a newspaper every day.

Unit 2

References

Reference List

1. A: **Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**
到展覽館有沒有直達車？
Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?
B: **Méiyǒu.**
沒有
No
2. A: **Dào nàr qù, zuò jǐlù chē ya?**
到那兒去，坐幾路車呀？
What bus do you take to get there?
B: **Zuò Yīlù chē.**
坐一路車。
Take the Number 1 bus.
3. B: **Zuò dào Xīdān huàn chē.**
坐到西單換車。
Take it to Xīdān and change buses.
4. A: **Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?**
咱們在哪兒買票？
Where do we buy tickets?
B: **Zài chēshàng mǎi piào.**
在車上買票。
We buy tickets on the bus.
5. B: **Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!**
好，現在走吧！
Okay, let's go now!
6. A: **Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?**
誒！咱們不是坐過站了吧？
Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?
B: **#####**
Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cǎi xià chē.
Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.
7. C:^a **Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?**

勞駕，十五路汽車站在哪兒？

Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?

D: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushàng.

就在那個路口上。

It's (just) on that corner.

8. gōnggòng qìchē

公共汽車

public bus (local)

9. -li

裏

in (locational ending)

10. -shang

上

on

11. shàng bān

上班

to start work, to go to work

12. xià bān

下班

to get off from work, to leave work

^aThis exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only

Vocabulary

ba	吧	(tone softener)
cái	才	then and only then, not until
gōnggòng qìchē	公共汽車	public bus (local)
-li	裏	in (locational ending)
piào (yìzhāng)	票 (一張)	ticket, coupon
qìchēzhàn	汽車站	bus stop
-shang	上	on (locational ending)
shàng bān	上班	to go to work, to start work
xià bān	下班	to get off from work, to leave work
Xīdān	西單	(a district in Běijīng)
zánmen	咱們	we (specifically includes the listener)
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展覽館	exhibition hall
zhídáchē	直達車	direct bus, nonstop bus
zuò dào	坐到	to ride to
zuòguò	坐過	to ride past
Āndìngmén	安定門	(a neighborhood in Běijīng)
bǐjiǎo	比較	comparatively, relatively
dòngwuyuán	動物園	zoo
liǎngcì	兩次	two times, twice
Xiǎo (name)	小	Little (name) [familiar form of name among friends]
xióngmāo	熊貓	panda
zhǎnlǎn	展覽	to exhibit
zhècì	這次	this time

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**
 到展覽館有沒有直達車？
 Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?
- B: **Méiyǒu.**
 沒有
 No

Dào zhanlǎnguǎn is the topic of the first sentence in exchange 1.

Zhídáchē refers to a city bus in exchange 1, although the word is more properly used to refer to buses between cities.

Changed tones: You have now learned several three-syllable words in which the middle syllable changes tone in normal fast speech. These words and the changes you hear are:

Jiānádà	加拿大		Jiānádà
Xīméndīng	西門町		Xīméndīng
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展覽館	zhǎnlǎnguǎn	zhanlǎnguǎn
zhídáchē	直達車		zhídáchē

(For further discussion of this type of tone change, see Tone Changes in the P&R Summary.)

Notes on №2

2. A: **Dào nàr qù, zuò jǐlù chē ya?**
 到那兒去，坐幾路車呀？
 What bus do you take to get there?
- B: **Zuò Yīlù chē.**
 坐一路車。
 Take the Number 1 bus.

Ya is a variant form of the marker **a**. If the word directly preceding the **a** ends in a vowel, the semivowel **y** or **w** may be inserted; the marker is then pronounced **ya** or **wa**. If the word directly preceding **a** ends in a consonant, that sound is carried forward as the initial sound of the marker: **/(consonant sound)a/**

Nǐ shì nǎrde rén /n/a?	你是哪兒的人哪？
Nǐ xìng Wáng /ng/a?	你是哪兒的人哪？
Nǐ hǎo /w/a?	你好哇？
Tā zhēn kuài /y/a!	他真快呀！

Notes on №3

3. B: Zuò dào Xīdān huàn chē.
 坐到西單換車。
 Take it to Xīdān and change buses.

Zuò dào Xīdān: In earlier exchanges, phrases consisting of **dào** and a place word were placed before the main verb in a sentence. In this exchange, you see that **dào** + place word can also be placed after the main verb. **Dào** is toneless when it follows the verb of a sentence.

Huàn is used in exchange 3 for “changing” from one bus to another. It was used in earlier modules for “changing” from one currency to another.

Notes on №4

4. A: Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
 咱們在哪兒買票？
 Where do we buy tickets?
 B: Zài chēshàng mǎi piào.
 在車上買票。
 We buy tickets on the bus.

Although spelled **zánmen**, this word is actually pronounced **zámen**, and in everyday conversation even as **zám**. Both **wǒmen** and **zánmen** are translated as “we.” Most speakers of Chinese outside **Běijīng** use only **wǒmen**.

Many Chinese from **Běijīng** use the pronoun **wǒmen** only when the person being spoken to is not included in the “we.” To show that the person being spoken to IS included in the “we,” **zánmen** is used.

For instance, if everyone in a room is Chinese, any one person could say to all of the others **Zánmen dōu shì Zhōngguó rén**, “All of us are Chinese.” If an American then entered the room, someone might say to him **Wǒmen shì Zhōngguó rén, nǐ shì Měiguó rén**, “We are Chinese, and you are American.”

The phrase **zài chēshàng** consists of the verb **zài** followed by the noun **chē** plus the locational ending **-shàng**. Some verbs like **zài** must be followed by a place word or phrase (or by time words or phrases). But not all nouns which refer to things which occupy space can be used as place words. You must learn which words can function as place words and which cannot.

Zhèr, nàr, relative location words (**zuǒbianr, dōngbianr, wàibianr**, etc.), and names of cities and countries may be used as place words. In general, nouns which refer to buildings, institutions, organizations, parks, and other specific locations may be used as place words. Nouns which refer to vehicles, people, books, furniture, and other things, that can be moved around are NOT considered place words. When a noun from this group is to be used in a phrase with **zài**, either a locational ending is added to the noun or the place word **zhèr** or **nàr** follows it.

Zài zhuōzishàng yǒu hěn duō shū.

在桌子上有很多書。

There are many books on the table.

Tā zài nèige zhuōzi nàr niàn shū.

他在那個桌子哪兒念書。

He studies at that table.

Locational endings: -shang, “on”; -li, “in”; -wài, “outside”; and -xià, “under,” are locational endings.

Tā zài lóuxià mǎi dōngxi.

他在樓下買東西。

He is buying things downstairs.

Fàndiànli yǒu méiyǒu mài tángde?

飯店裏有沒有賣糖的？

Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?

You have learned three generally equivalent ways to form place expressions: noun + locational ending; noun followed by relative location word; noun + de followed by relative location word.

Tā	zài	mén-		-wài		děng	ni.
Tā	zài	mén		wài-	bianr	děng	ni.
Tā	zài	mén	-de	wài-	bianr	děng	ni.

Notes on №5

5. B: Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!
好，現在走吧！
Okay, let's go now!

Ba: You have seen the marker **ba** used in different situations at the ends of sentences. In each case, however, its effect was to soften the impact of whatever the speaker was saying. Here is a summary of the uses you have seen:

- a. After a phrase which puts forth an opinion or guess, **ba** adds a questioning tone (BIO, Unit 2).

Tā dàgài bù lái le ba?

他大概不來了吧？

He's probably not coming after all, is he?

Nǐ shì Wèi Shàoxiào ba?

你是魏少校吧？

You must be Major Weiss.

- b. After a statement which puts forth a course of action, **ba** softens the tone. **Ba** may be used at the end of a sentence with a meaning ranging anywhere from tentative and consulting to suggesting or advising to requesting or ordering. (The tone of **ba** sentences varies according to the person being spoken to, the speaker's tone of voice, and other words, such as **qǐng**, “please,” in a sentence.) (MON, Unit 3)

Nǐ zǒu ba!

你走吧！
Leave! (ORDERING)
Nǐ hǎohāor xiǎngxiang ba!
你好好兒想想吧！
You think it over carefully! (ADVISING)
Qǐng ba!
請吧！
Please go ahead! (INVITING)
Zánmen zǒu ba.
咱們走吧。
Let's go. (SUGGESTING)
Wǒ mǎi dàde ba.
我買大的吧。
I guess I'll get the large one. (TENTATIVE AND CONSULTING)

There is no single way to translate this use of *ba*. In the examples above, you can see that when the subject is “you,” *ba* goes untranslated; when the subject is “we,” *ba* is translated as “let’s”; and when the subject is “I,” *ba* is translated as “I guess.”

Notes on №6

6. A: Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?
 誒！咱們不是坐過站了吧？
 Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?
- B: 還沒呢。下一站才下車。
 Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.
 Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

Bú shì: Below are some examples of affirmative questions and their negative counterparts (using *bú shì*). Notice that in the two negative examples *shì* means something like “to be the case that....”

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le ba?
他已經走了吧。
Has he already gone?
Tā bú shì yǐjīng zǒu le ba?
他不是已經走了吧？
Hasn't he already gone? (isn't it the case that he has already gone?)

Tā zhù zài Shànghǎi ma?

她住在上海嗎？

Does she live in Shànghǎi?

Tā bú shì zhù zài Shànghǎi ma?

她不是住在上海嗎？

Doesn't she live in Shànghǎi? (Isn't it the case that she lives in Shànghǎi?)

Zuòguò le: To the main verb *zuò*, “to ride,” “to take,” the ending *-guò* is added to indicate the result of the action—“going past/too far.” (The full verb *guò* means “to pass,” “to cross.”) The ending *-guò* may also be added to the verb *zǒu*, “to go,” to indicate result.

Òu, nǐ zhǎo Nánwèi Hútong! Nǐ zǒuguò le! Nǐ děi wǎng huí zǒu.

哦，你找南緯胡同！你坐過了！你得往回走。

Oh, you are looking for Nánwèi Hútong. You have walked past it. You will have to go back.

Aspect marker ne: You have frequently seen an aspect marker used to indicate a CHANGE: completion *le* shows that an action or process has been carried out (*Tā zǒu le*, “He has left”); new situation *le* marks a change in the past, present, or future (*Tāde dàyī pòle*, “His coat is worn out”). In exchange 6, the aspect marker *ne* indicates the ABSENCE OF CHANGE. In this exchange, *ne* emphasizes that there has been no change in the situation. You may want to think of *ne* as the opposite of *le*.

The marker *ne* is used with ACTION and STATE verbs.

Tā xiànzài niàn shū ne.

他現在念書呢。

He is studying now.

Tā zài zhèr ne.

他在這兒呢。

He's here.

Zhèzhī bǐ hái kěyǐ xiě ne.

這支筆還可以寫呢。

This pen is still good (can still write).

Hái, “still,” “yet”: When this adverb is used, the sentence very often ends with the marker *ne*.

Míngtiān wǒ hái bù zǒu ne.

明天我還沒走呢。

I'm not leaving tomorrow (yet). (i.e., I'll still be here tomorrow.)

Tā hái méi lái ne.

他還沒來呢。

He hasn't come yet.

Cái means “then and only then” or “not until then.” It is used to talk about something that has happened or will happen later than expected.

Wǒmen míngtiān cái zǒu.

我們明天才走。

We don't leave until tomorrow.

Sentences in which **cái** is used emphasize when something happened, rather than the fact that it happened. Therefore **(shì)...-de**, not **le**, is used to indicate completed action.

Tā (shì) bādiǎn zhōng cái lái de.

他是八點鐘才來的。

He didn't come until eight o'clock.

Wǒ zuótiān cái dào de.

我昨天才到的。

I didn't arrive until yesterday.

Notice that the **shì** in the **shì...-de** construction may be omitted. Also, **cái** is placed AFTER a time word or phrase and BEFORE the verb.

You have learned three words for “then”: **jiù**, **zài**, **cái**. **Jiù** is used for action taking place earlier than expected. **Cái** and **zài** imply that something happens later than expected. **Cái** and **jiù** are used in descriptions of completed or future action. **Zài** is used mostly for plans, suggestions, and commands—in reference to future actions.

Tā zuótiān jiù dào le.

他昨天就到了。

He arrived yesterday (already).

Tā (shì) zuótiān cái lái de.

他是昨天才來的。

He didn't come until yesterday.

Nǐ míngtiān zài zǒu ba!

你明天再走吧。

Don't go until tomorrow!

Notice that, in the description of past events, most sentences containing **jiù** also contain the completion marker.

Notes on №7

7. C: Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?
勞駕，十五路汽車站在哪兒？

Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?
D: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushang.
就在那個路口上。
It's (just) on that corner.

Lùkǒushang, literally “on the intersection”: Lùkǒu means “road mouth,” a crossroads or intersection. The word is a place-word expression and may follow zài with or without the locational ending -shang.

Drills

Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. **Dào Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到北京展览馆有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Beijing Exhibition Center?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

Ethnic Hotel

Dào Mínzú Fàndiàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到民族饭店有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to the Nationalities Hotel?

2. **Dào Mínzú Fàndiàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到民族饭店有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to National People's Hotel?

Cue

Sānlítún

三里屯

Sānlítún

Dào Sānlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Sānlítún?

3. **Dào Sānlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Sānlítún ?

Cue

Xīdān

西单

Xīdān

Dào Xīdān yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到西单有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Xīdān?

4. Dào Xīdān yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到西单有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Xīdān?

Cue Dōngdān Càishìchǎng
东单菜市场
Dōngdān Market

Dào Dōngdān Càishìchǎng yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē ?

到东单菜市场有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān Market?

5. Dào Dōngdān Càishìchǎng yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单菜市场有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān Market?

Cue Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn
东单电影院
Dōngdān Cinema

Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单电影院有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān cinema?

6. Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单电影院有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān cinema?

Cue Jiānádà Wǔguānchù
加拿大武官处
Canadian Embassy

Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到加拿大武官处有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Canada Military Office?

7. Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到加拿大武官处有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Canada Military Office?

Cue

Sǎnlítún

三里屯

Sǎnlítún

Dào Sǎnlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Sǎnlítún?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Dào Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到北京展览馆有没有直达车？

is there a direct bus to the Běijīng Exhibition Hall?

Cue

Xīdān

西单

Xīdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Xīdān huàn chē.

没有，得在西单换车。

There isn't. You have to change buses at Xīdān.

2. Dào Sānlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Sānlítún?

Cue

Dōngdān

东单

Dōngdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Dōngdān huàn chē.

没有，得在东单换车。

No, you have to change the bus in Dōngdān.

3. Dào Guānghuá Lù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到光华路有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Guānghuá Road?

Cue

tāmen nàr

他们那儿

by them

Méiyǒu, děi zài tāmen nàr huàn chē.

没有，得在他们那儿换车。

4. Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuan yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Dōngdān?

Cue

Qiánmén

前门

Qiánmén

Méiyǒu, děi zài Qiánmén huàn chē.

没有，得在前门换车。

No, you have to change the bus.

5. Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到武官处有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Wǔguān Beach?

Cue

Xīdān

西单

Xīdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Xīdān huàn chē.

没有，得在西单换车。

No, you have to change at Xīdān.

6. Dào Qiánmén yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到前门有没有直达车？

Is there any direct bus to Qiánmén?

Cue

Dōngdān

东单

Dōngdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Dōngdān huàn chē.

没有，得在东单换车。

No, you have to change the bus in Dōngdān.

7. Dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到王府井大街有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Wángfǔjǐng Street?

Cue

càishichǎng nàr

菜市场

by the market

Méiyǒu, děi zài càishichǎng nàr huàn chē.

没有，得在菜市场换车。

No, have to change the bus at the food market.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. dào nàr qù
到那儿去
to go there

Cue jǐ
几
what number

Dào nàr qù zuò jǐlù chē?
到那儿去坐几路车?
What [number] bus do you take to go there?

2. dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù
到展览馆去
to go to the exhibition hall

Cue 3
3
3

Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù zuò Sānlù chē.
到展览馆去坐三路车。
To go to the exhibition hall, take the Number 3 bus.

3. dào Dōngdān qù
到东单去
to do to Dōngdān

Cue 3
3
3

Dào Dōngdān qù zuò Sānlù chē.
到东单去坐三路车。
To go to Dōngdān take the Number 3 bus.

Cue

jǐ

几

what number

Dào Dōngdān Càishichǎng qù zuò jǐlù chē?

到东单菜市场去坐几路车？

What [number] bus do you take to go to Dōngdān vegetable market.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nín xiān zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dao Xīdān huàn chē.

您先坐一路车，坐到西单换车。

You first take the Number 1 bus. Take it to Xīdān and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dao Xīdān huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐一路车，坐到西单换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 1 bus. I take it to Xīdān and change buses. Right?

2. Nín xiān zuò Sānlù chē, zuò dao Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē huàn chē.

您先坐三路车，坐到王府井大街换车。

You first take the Number 3. Take it to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Sānlù chē, zuò dao Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐三路车，坐到王府井大街换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 3 bus. I take it to Wángfǔjǐng and change buses. Right?

3. Nín xiān zuò Liùlù chē, zuò dao Dōngdān huàn chē.

您先坐六路车，坐到东单换车。

You first take the Number 6. Take it to Dōngdān and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Liùlù chē, zuò dao Dōngdān huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐六路车，坐到东单换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 6 bus. I take it to Dōngdān and change buses. Right?

4. Nín xiān zuò Wǔlù chē, zuò dao Qiánmén huàn chē.

您先坐五路车，坐到前门换车。

You first take the Number 5. Take it to Qiánmén and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Wǔlù chē, zuò dao huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐五路车，坐到前门换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 5 bus. I take it to Qiánmén and change buses. Right?

5. Nín xiān zuò Shílù chē, zuò dao Sānlǐtǔn huàn chē.

您先坐十路车，坐到三里屯换车。

You first take the Number 10. Take it to Sānlǐtǔn and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shí lù chē, zuò dào Sān lǐ tún huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐十路车，坐到三里屯换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 10 bus. I take it to Sānlǐtūn and change buses. Right?

6. Nín xiān zuò Qī lù chē, zuò dào Rì tán lù huàn chē.

您先坐七路车，坐到日坛路换车。

You first take the Number 7. Take it to Temple Road

and change buses. Wǒ xiān zuò Qī lù chē, zuò dào Rì tán lù huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐七路车，坐到日坛路换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 7 bus. I take it to Temple Road and change buses. Right?

7. Nín xiān zuò Shí èr lù chē, zuò dào Guānghuá lù huàn chē.

您先坐十二路车，坐到光华路换车。

You first take the Number 12. Take it to Guānghuá road

and change buses. Wǒ xiān zuò Shí èr lù chē, zuò dào Guānghuá lù huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐十二路车，坐到光华路换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 12 bus. I take it to Guānghuá road and change buses. Right?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Dào nàr qù xiān zuò Sānlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē.

到那儿去先坐三路车，然后坐五路车。

To go there, first take the Number 3 bus; then take the Number 5 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Sānlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐三路车，然后坐五路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 3 bus; then take the Number 5 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

2. Dào Zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù xiān zuò Yīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sìlù chē.

到展览馆去先坐一路车，然后坐四路车。

To go to Zhǎnlǎnguǎn, first take the Number 1 bus; then take the Number 4 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Yīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sìlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐一路车，然后坐四路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 1 bus; then take the Number 4 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

3. Dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù xiān zuò Èrlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē.

到王府井大街去先坐二路车，然后坐五路车。

To go to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard, first take the Number 2 bus; then take the Number 5 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Èrlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐二路车，然后坐五路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 2 bus; then take the Number 5 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

4. Dào Rìtán Lù qù xiān zuò Qīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sānlù chē.

到日坛路去先坐七路车，然后坐三路车。

To go to Rìtán Road, first take the Number 7 bus; then take the Number "" bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Qīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sānlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我坐七路车，然后坐三路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 7 bus; then take the Number 3 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

5. Dào Sānlǐtún qù xiān zuò Liùlù chē, ránhòu zuò Èrlù chē.

到三里屯去先坐六路车，然后坐二路车。

To go to Sānlǐtún, first take the Number 6 bus; then take the Number 2 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Liùlù chē, ránhòu zuò Èrlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我坐六路车，然后坐二路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 6 bus; then take the Number 2 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

6. Dào Rìtán Lù qù xiān zuò Shílù chē, ránhòu zuò Qīlù chē.

到日坛路去先坐十路车，然后坐七路车。

To go to Rìtán Road, first take the Number 10 bus; then take the Number 7 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shílù chē, ránhòu zuò Qīlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐十路车，然后坐七路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 10 bus; then take the Number 7 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

7. Dào Xīdān qù xiān zuò Shíwulù chē, ránhòu zuò Liùlù chē.

到西单去先坐十五路车，然后坐六路车。

To go to Xīdān, first take the Number 15 bus; then take the Number 6 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shíwulù chē, ránhòu zuò Liùlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐十五路车，然后坐六路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 15 bus; then take the Number 6 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue chēshang
车上
on the bus

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài chēshang mǎi piào ma?
咱们在哪儿买票？在车上买票吗？
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them on the bus?

2. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue zhèr
这儿
here

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài zhèr mǎi piào ma?
咱们在哪儿买票？在这儿买票吗？
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them here?

3. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue nàr
那儿
there

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài nàr mǎi piào ma?
咱们在哪儿买票？在那儿买票吗？
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them there?

4. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue Dōngdān nàr
东单那儿
at Dōngdān

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài Dōngdān nàr mǎi piào ma?
咱们在哪儿买票？在东单那儿买票吗？
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them at Dōngdān?

5. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue chēshang
车上
on the bus

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài chēshang mǎi piào ma?
咱们在哪儿买票？在车上买票吗？
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them on the bus?

6. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue cài shì chǎng nàr
菜市场
at the vegetable market

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài cài shì chǎng nàr mǎi piào ma?
咱们在哪儿买票？在菜市场买票吗？
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them at the vegetable market?

7. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?
咱们在哪儿买票？
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue

Xīdān nàr
西单那儿
at Xīdān

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài Xīdān nàr mǎi piào ma?

咱们在哪儿买票？在西单那儿买票吗？

Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them at Xīdān?

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Zánmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng shàng ban.

咱们九点钟上班。

We start work at nine o'clock.

Zánmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng cái shàng bān.

咱们九点钟才上班。

We don't start work until nine o'clock.

2. Wǒmen wǔdiǎnbàn xià bān.

我们五点半下班。

We start work at 5 o'clock.

Wǒmen wǔdiǎnbàn cái xià bān.

我们五点半下班。

We'll not get off work until half past five.

3. Wǒmen xià yízhàn xià chē.

我们下一站才下车。

We get off at the next stop.

Wǒmen xià yízhàn cái xià chē.

我们下一站才下车。

We don't get off until the next stop.

4. Yínháng jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.

银行九点钟开门。

The bank opens at nine o'clock.

Yínháng jiǔdiǎn zhōng cái kāi mén.

银行九点钟才开门。

The bank doesn't open until nine o'clock.

5. Wǒmen xià yízhàn huàn chē.

我们下一站换车。

We change trains at the next stop.

Wǒmen xià yízhàn cái huàn chē.

我们下一站才换车。

We'll not change trains until the next stop.

6. Tāmen liùdiǎn zhōng xià ban.

他们六点钟下班。

They get off work at six o'clock.

Tāmen liùdiǎn zhōng cái xià ban.

他们六点钟才下班。

They don't get off work until six o'clock.

7. Tāmen shídiǎn zhōng shàng ban.

他们十点钟才上班。

They don't go to work until ten o'clock.

Tāmen shídiǎn zhōng cái shàng ban.

他们十点钟才上班。

They don't go to work until ten o'clock.

4. Dàilǐ Jiē dào le ma?
大理街到了吗?
Have we reached Dàilǐ Street?

Cue dào le
到了
already arrived

Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.
到了。我们在这儿下车。
We have already arrived. We get off here.

5. Zhōngshān Běilù dào le ma?
中山北路到了吗?
Have we reached Zhōngshān Běilù?

Cue hái méi ne
还没呢
Not yet

Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.
还没呢。下一站才下车。
Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

6. Héping Xīlù dào le ma?
和平西路到了吗?
Have we reached Héping Xīlù?

Cue dào le
到了
already arrived

Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.
到了。下车。
We have already arrived. We get off here.

7. Jīlóng Lù dào le ma?
基隆街到了吗?
Have we reached Jīlóng Road?

Cue

hái méi ne

还没呢

Not yet

Hái méi ne. Xià yìzhàn cái xià chē.

还没呢。下车。下一站才下车。

Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐngwèn Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

请问十五路站在哪儿？

May I ask, where is the Number 15 bus stop?

Cue

nèige lùkǒushàng

那个路口上

on that corner

Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushàng.

就在那个路口上。

it's [just] on that corner.

2. Qǐngwèn Shísìlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

请问十四路汽车站在哪儿？

May I ask, where is No. 14 bus stop?

Cue

nèige dàlóu nàr

那个大楼那儿

right there by that building

Jiù zài nèige dàlóu nàr.

就在那个大楼那儿。

it's [just] right there by that building.

3. Qǐngwèn Liùlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

请问六路汽车站在哪儿？

May I ask, where is No. 6 bus stop?

Cue

lùde nèibian

路德那边

over the road

Jiù zài lùde nèibian.

就在路德那边。

it's [just] over the road.

4. Qǐngwèn, Yīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?
请问一路汽车站在哪儿?
May I ask, where is No 1 bus stop?

Cue nèige yínháng qiánbian
那个银行前边
front of the bank

Jiù zài nèige yínháng qiánbian.
就在那个银行前边。
it's [just] in the front of the bank.

5. Qǐngwèn, Sānlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?
请问三路汽车站在哪儿?
May I ask, where is No 3 bus stop?

Cue nèige shāngdiàn nàr
那个商店那儿
by that shop there

Jiù zài nèige shāngdiàn nàr.
就在那个商店那儿。
it's [just] by that shop there.

6. Qǐngwèn, Qīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?
请问七路汽车站在哪儿?
May I ask, where is No 7 bus stop?

Cue càishichǎng qiánbian
菜市场前边
front of the vegetable market

Jiù zài nèige càishichǎng qiánbian.
就在菜市场前边。
it's [just] in front of the vegetable market.

7. Qǐngwèn, Shílù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?
请问十路汽车站在哪儿?
May I ask, where is No 10 bus stop?

Cue

nèige diànyǐngyuàn qiánbian

那个电影院前边

front of the movie theater

Jiù zài nèige diànyǐngyuàn qiánbian.

就在那个电影院前边。

it's [just] in the front of the movie theater.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她九点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at nine o'clock?

Cue bā diǎn zhōng
八点钟
8 o'clock

Tā shuō tā bādiǎn zhōng jiù lái.
他/她说他/她八点钟来。
He/she says He/she is coming at eight o'clock.

2. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她九点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at nine o'clock?

Cue shí diǎn zhōng
十点钟
10 o'clock

Tā shuō tā shídiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.
他/他说他/她十点钟才来呢。
He/she says He/she isn't coming until ten o'clock.

3. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā sìdiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她四点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at 4 o'clock?

Cue wǔ diǎn zhōng
五点钟
5 o'clock

Tā shuō tā wǔdiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.
他/他说他/她五点钟才来呢。
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 5 o'clock.

4. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā yídiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她一点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at one o'clock?

Cue shí èr diǎn zhōng
十二点中
12 o'clock

Tā shuō tā shíèr diǎn zhōng jiù lái.
他/她说他/她十二点钟才来呢。
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 12 o'clock.

5. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā bādiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她八点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at 8 o'clock?

Cue qī diǎn zhōng
七点中
7 o'clock

Tā shuō tā qīdiǎn zhōng jiù lái.
他/他说他/她七点钟才来呢。
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 7 o'clock.

6. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā liùdiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她六点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at 6 o'clock?

Cue bā diǎn zhōng
八点钟
8 o'clock

Tā shuō tā bādiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.
他/她说他/她八点钟才来呢。
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 8 o'clock.

7. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā shídiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他/她几点钟来? 他/她十点钟来吗?
What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at 10 o'clock?

Cue

shí yī diǎn zhōng

十一点钟

11 o'clock

Tā shuō tā shíyīdiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.

他/她说他/她十一点钟才来呢。

He/she says He/she isn't coming until 11 o'clock.

Unit 3

References

Reference List

1. A: Ài, jìchéngchē!
哎，計程車！
Hey, taxi!
B: Ní dào nǎlǐ?
你到哪兒？
Where are you going?
A: Dào huǒchēzhàn.
到火車站。
To the train station.
2. *B: Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn xíngli ma?
只有這一件行李嗎？
Is there only this one piece of luggage?
A: Shì.
是。
Yes.
3. *B: Wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zài qiánbian.
我把行李放在前邊。
I'll put the suitcase in front.
4. A: Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!
你開得太快了！
You are driving too fast!
5. C: Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.
他開車，開得不快。
He doesn't drive fast.
6. A: Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, láidejí.
我們有時間，來得及。
We have time. We can make it in time.
7. A: Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.
輕慢一點開。
Please drive a little slower.
8. ** A: Bié kāi nàme kuài!

9. B: 別開那麼快！
Don't drive so fast!
Zhè shì nín de xíngli.
這是您的行李。
Here is your suitcase.
A: Xièxie. Duōshao qián?
謝謝，多少錢？
Thank you. How much is it [the fare]?
- B: Èrshíqīkuài.
二十七塊。
Twenty-seven dollars.
A: Zhè shì sānshíkuài, bú yòng zhǎo le.
這是三十塊，不用找了。
Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change. (literally, "No need to give me change.")
10. A: Qǐng nǐ zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.
請你在前邊那個銀行停一下。
Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.
B: Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài nèibian děng nín.
好。我把車停在那邊等您。
Okay. I'll park the car over there and wait for you.
11. chūzū qìchē
出租汽車
taxi (PRC)
12. lái bù jí
來不及
can't make it in time
13. qìchē
汽車
car, motor vehicle
14. zhème
這麼
so, to this extent, in this way
15. zènme
怎麼
so, to this extent, in this way

Vocabulary

bǎ	把	(prepositional verb which indicates the direct object)
bié	別	don't
bú yòng	不	no need to
chūzū qìchē	出租汽車	taxi (PRC)
fàng	放	to put
huǒchēzhàn	火車站	train station
-jiàn	件	(counter for items or articles such as suitcases and clothing)
jìchéngchē	計程車	taxi (Taipei)
kāi	開	to drive (a vehicle)
kuài	快	to be fast
láibují	來不及	can't make it in time
láidejí	來得及	can make it in time
màn	慢	to be slow
nàme	那麼	so, to that extent, in that way
qìchē	汽車	car, motor vehicle
shíjiān	時間	time
tíng	停	to stop, to park
xíngli (yíjiàn)	行李	luggage, suitcase
yíxià	一下	a short amount of time
zènme	怎麼	so, to this extent, in this way
zhème	這麼	so, to this extent, in this way
chī fàn	吃飯	to have a meal
jìnliàng	盡量	to exert all one's effort, to do one's best to
Lǎo (name)	老	Old (name) [familiar nickname for an older person among close friends]
mótuōchē	摩托車	motorcycle
náchūqu	拿出去	to take (something) out
sòng	送	to see someone off, to escort someone to a train station, airport, bus depot, or pier
Zhèng hǎo.	正好	Right on time.

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: Ài, jìchéngchē!
哎，計程車！
Hey, taxi!
- B: Nǐ dào nǎlǐ?
你到哪兒？
Where are you going?
- A: Dào huǒchēzhàn.
到火車站。
To the train station.

Nǐ dào nǎlǐ? This expression, like the English “Where to?” is not a full sentence. The taxi driver is using a shortened form of Nǐ dào nǎlǐ qù?

Notes on №2-3

2. B:^a Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn xíngli ma?
只有這一件行李嗎？
Is there only this one piece of luggage?
- A: Shì.
是。
Yes.
3. B: Wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zài qiánbian.
我把行李放在前邊。
I'll put the suitcase in front.

^aAn object which follows the verb is nonspecific unless marked as specific with zhèi or nèi.

Zhè yíjiàn xíngli: -jiàn is the counter for xíngli.

Bǎ is a prepositional verb which often cannot be directly translated into English. Originally, as a full verb, bǎ meant “to hold something with one’s hands.” Today bǎ is usually used as a prepositional verb which brings the direct object to the front of the sentence, before the main verb. In some cases, bǎ may be translated as “take.”

Tā bǎ zhèběn shū fàng zài zhuōzishang.

他把這本書放在桌子上。

He put the book on the table. (He took the book and put it on the table.)

But, in many cases, the meaning of “take” does not correspond to the function of bǎ in the sentence.

Bǎ may be used with many types of objects, concrete and abstract. As a prepositional verb, bǎ shows that its object (the noun which follows) is the direct object in the sentence, even though it does not follow the main verb.

Tā mài tāde qìchē le.	He sold his car.
他賣他的汽車了。	
Tā bǎ tāde qìchē mài le.	
他把他的汽車賣了	

The next questions are “Why use *bǎ*?” and “When is *bǎ* used?” On the next page are some basic rules for using *bǎ*.

- a. The object in a *bǎ* phrase must be a particular known thing. This rule follows the general pattern in Chinese of an object preceding the verb, in topic position or in a *bǎ* phrase, being specific.* The object in a *bǎ* phrase should be translated by the English definite article “the” or by other words that indicate definiteness, such as “that” and “my.”

Nǐ yǒu xínglǐ ma?
你有行李嗎？
Do you have any luggage?
Yǒu. Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn.
有。只有這一件。
Yes. I have only this one piece.
Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ xínglǐ fàngzài qiánbian.
好。我把行李放在前邊。
Okay. I will put the suitcase in front.

- b. The object of a *bǎ* phrase must be at the disposal of the subject before the action begins. Thus the object of *kànjian*, “to see,” cannot be used with *bǎ*, nor can the object of *mǎi*, “to buy.”

Wǒ mǎile nàiběn shū.
我買了那本書。
I bought the book.
Wǒ bǎ nàiběn shū mài le.
我把那本書賣了。
I sold the book.

- c. *Fàng zài qiánbian*: The verb in a *bǎ* sentence is usually a transitive ACTION verb. An action verb refers to an activity that can be done voluntarily, either physically (*mài*, “to sell”) or mentally (*niàn*, “to study”). Contrast this with a state verb, which refers to a quality or condition that the subject has no control over.

For instance, you can decide to study or to learn something, so *xué* is an action verb. But you cannot decide to know something, so *zhīdao* is a state verb. Although some state verbs, like *zhīdao* and *xīhuan*, are transitive, the objects of these verbs cannot be put in a *bǎ* phrase because these verbs are not action verbs.

- d. A *bǎ* sentence does not end with only a verb of one syllable. Either the verb has several syllables or a phrase follows the verb. In the final sentence of exchange 3, the action verb *fàng* is followed by *zai* and the destination *qiánbian*.

Notes on №4

4. A: *Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!*
 你開得太快了！
 You are driving too fast!

-de: To describe how action is performed, the marker **-de** is added to the verb describing the action, and that verb is followed by an adjectival verb which expresses the MANNER in which the action takes place.

Cultural information: Taxi drivers are not offended by comments about their driving such as the exclamation in exchange 4. If ignored, a request to slow down should be repeated.

Notes on №5

5. C: *Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.*
 他開車，開得不快。
 He doesn't drive fast.

Verb, object, and the description of manner: If an action verb with a direct object is to be described in terms of how the action is done, use the following pattern.

Tā shuō Zhōngguó huà shuō -de tài/hěn/bú màn.

他說中國話說得太/很/不慢。

(he speak Chinese speak too/very/not slow)

“He speaks Chinese too/very/not slowly.”

Notice that the main verb and direct object occur first; then the main verb is repeated, followed by **-de** and the description of manner. Compare the pattern above with the pattern you learned in the Biographic Information Module, Unit 8: *Wo niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián*, “I studied English for six years.”

The main verb is repeated when BOTH the direct object and a duration phrase or a description of manner MUST follow the verb directly. In such a case, Chinese handles this post-verb “traffic jam” by making a topic out of the more general information (what is being done): the verb and direct object. The more specific information about how the action is done becomes the comment. A literal translation of the pattern example above is “As for (the way) he speaks Chinese, (he) speaks too/very/not slowly.”

A special point to observe: In English, we may say “He doesn’t speak Chinese slowly,” putting the negative word before “speak.” In Chinese, the negation must be placed directly in front of the word that is referred to (in the example, *man*, “slow”—not saying that he doesn’t speak, but saying that his speech is not slow).

Linguists have pointed out the potentially comical effect of using English word order for sentences in Chinese with manner descriptions.

If you were to use English word order to say “I can’t speak Chinese very well,” *Wǒ bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà hěn hào*, your sentence would mean, literally, “(The fact that) I can’t speak Chinese is

very good.” The right way to say “I can’t speak Chinese very well” is *Wǒ shuō Zhōngguó huà shuōde bú tài hǎo*.

Notes on №6-7

6. A: *Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, lái dé jí.*
 我們有時間，來得及。
 We have time. We can make it in time.
7. A: *Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.*
 輕慢一點開。
 Please drive a little slower.

Shíjiān: You now know two words for “time”: *shíhou* and *shíjiān*. *Shíjiān* is used for an amount of time. *Shíhou* is usually used for a point or period in time when something happens.

Láidejí is an idiom meaning “able to make it on time [to do some- thing].” The negative, “not able to make it on time,” is *láibují*. (See the Meeting Module for additional discussion of such idioms.)

Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi, “Please drive a little slower”: In the notes on exchange 5, *yǒu* learned a pattern for describing manner: verb + -de + adjectival verb. In this sentence, however, the adjectival verb *màn* + *yìdiǎn* precede the verb *kāi*. When the adjectival verbs *màn*, *kuài*, *zǎo*, and *wǎn* are followed by *yìdiǎn*, the phrases thus formed may either precede or follow the verb of the sentence.

<i>Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.</i>	Please drive a little slower.
輕慢一點開。	
<i>Qǐng kāi màn yìdiǎn.</i>	
請開慢一點。	Please drive a little faster.
<i>Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn kāi.</i>	
請快一點開。	
<i>Qǐng kāi kuài yìdiǎn.</i>	Please come a little earlier.
請開快一點。	
<i>Qǐng nǐ zǎo yìdiǎn lái.</i>	
請你早一點來。	Please come a little later.
<i>Qǐng nǐ lái zǎo yìdiǎn.</i>	
請你來早一點。	
<i>Qǐng nǐ wǎn yìdiǎn lái.</i>	Please come a little later.
請你晚一點來。	
<i>Qǐng nǐ lái wǎn yìdiǎn.</i>	
請你來晚一點。	

Many adjectival verbs + *yìdiǎn* must follow the sentence verb.

Xiě xiǎo yídiǎn.	Write it a little smaller.
些小一點。	
Xiě dà yídiǎn.	Write it a little bigger.
寫大一點。	
Zuò hǎo yídiǎn.	Do it a little better.
做好一點。	

The marker *-de* is optional, and usually omitted, before adjectival verb + *yídiǎn* phrases.

Notes on №8

8. A: **Bié kāi nàme kuài!**
別開那麼快！
Don't drive so fast!

Here you see a third way to describe the performance of an action.

First, you saw a straight description:

Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!
你開得太快了！
You are driving too fast!

OR

Tā niàn shū niǎnde bú cuò.
她念書念得不錯。
She is doing pretty well in her studies.

Then, you saw a command in which an adjectival verb + *yídiǎn* phrase could be placed either before or after the main sentence verb:

Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.	Please drive a little slower.
請慢一點開。	
Qǐng kāi màn yídiǎn.	
請開慢一點。	

Now, in *Bié kāi nàme kuài*, you see a negative command. The modifying adjectival verb follows the main verb. The marker *-de* is optional, and usually omitted, as long as the adjectival verb is preceded by name or *zhème* (*zènme*).

Bié zǒu nàme màn le!
別走那麼慢了！

Quit walking so slowly!

Bié qǐlai zènme wǎn!

別起來那麼晚！

Don't get up so late!

Nǐ zǒu nàme màn, zánmen jiù lái bu jí le!

你走那麼慢，咱們就來不及了。

If you walk so slowly, we won't make it in time!

Notes on №9

9. B: Zhè shì nín de xíng li.
這是您的行李。
Here is your suitcase.
- A: Xièxie. Duōshao qián?
謝謝，多少錢？
Thank you. How much is it [the fare]?
- B: Èrshíqīkuài.
二十七塊。
Twenty-seven dollars.
- A: Zhè shì sānshíkuài, bú yòng zhǎo le.
這是三十塊，不用找了。
Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change. (literally, "No need to give me change.")

Èrshíqīkuài: This money phrase does not contain the word *qián* because the counter *kuài* can stand alone if the reference could clearly be only to money. Other counters for money, such as *máo* and *fēn*, usually require the addition of *qián*.

Bú yòng zhǎo le: *Bú yòng* is an idiom meaning "no need to." A more literal translation of the sentence is "No need to give me change." *Nǐ bú yòng kāi nàme kuài* would be translated as "There's no need for you to drive that fast."¹

Notes on №10

10. A: Qǐng nǐ zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.
請你在前邊那個銀行停一下。
Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.
- B: Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài nàibiān děng nín.
好。我把車停在那邊等您。
Okay. I'll park the car over there and wait for you.

¹*The literal meaning of the verb *yòng* is "to use."

Yíxià, “awhile,” is used to indicate a short, indefinite amount of time. The use of this word communicates indefiniteness, just as reduplicating the verb would have done (**tíngyítíng**). The first speaker in this exchange does not commit himself to an exact length of time.

Drills

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ kāide tài kuài le.
你开得太快了。
You are driving too fast.

Cue chē
车
car

Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le.
你开车开得太快了。
You are driving (the car) too fast.

2. Tā tíngde tài kuài le.
他/她停得太快了。
He/she stopped too quickly.

Cue chē
车
car

Tā tíng chē tíngde tài kuài le.
他/她停车停得太快了。
He/she stopped the car too quickly.

3. Nǐ kànde tài màn le.
你看得太慢了。
You are reading too slowly.

Cue shū
书
book

Nǐ kàn shū kànde tài màn le.

你看书看得太慢了。

You are reading the book too slowly.

4. Tā shuōde tài kuài le.

他/她说得太快了。

He/she speaking too fast.

Cue

Yīngwén

英文

English

Tā shuō Yīngwén shuode tài kuài le.

他/她说英文说得太快了。

He/she speaking English too fast.

5. Nǐ xuéde tài màn le.

你学得太慢了。

You learn too slowly.

Cue

Zhōngwén

中文

Chinese

Nǐ xué Zhōngwén xuéde tài màn le.

你学中文学得太慢了。

You learn Chinese too slowly.

6. Tā niànde tài kuài le.

他/她念得太快了。

He/she studying too fast.

Cue

zhèngzhìxué

政治学

politics

Tā niàn zhèngzhìxué niànde tài kuài le.

他/她念政治学念得太快了。

He/she studying politics too fast.

7. Nǐ kànde tài màn le.

你看德太慢了。

You are reading too slowly.

Cue

bào

报

newspaper

Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le.

你看报看德太慢了。

You are reading the newspaper too slowly.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng ni màn kāi.

请你慢开。

Please drive slowly.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.

请你慢一点开。

Please drive a little slower.

2. Qǐng ni màn zǒu.

请你慢走。

Please walk slower.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn zǒu.

请你慢一点走。

Please walk a little slower.

3. Qǐng ni màn shuō.

请你慢说。

Please speak slower.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn shuō.

请你慢一点说。

Please speak a little slower.

4. Qǐng ni kuài shuō.

请你快说。

Please speak quicker.

Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shuō.

请你快一点说。

Please speak a little quicker.

5. Qǐng ni màn xià chē.

请你慢下车。

Please go out slower.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn xià chē.

请你慢一点下车。

Please go out a little slower.

6. Qǐng ni kuài qù.

请你快去。

Please go quicker.

Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn qù.

请你快一点去。

Please go a little quicker.

7. Qǐng ni kuài shàng chē.

请你快上车。

Please get in quicker.

Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shàng chē.

请你快一点上车。

Please get in a little quicker.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ kāi chē, kāide tài kuài le.

你开车，开得太快乐。

You are driving too fast.

Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.

你开车，开得太快乐。请你慢一点开。

You are driving too fast. Please drive a little slower.

2. Nǐ kàn shū, kànde tài màn le.

你看书，看得太慢了。

You are reading the book too slowly.

Nǐ kàn shū, kànde tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn kàn.

你看书，看得太慢了。请你快一点看。

You are reading the book too slowly. Please read a bit quicker.

3. Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le.

你看报看得太慢了。

You are reading the newspaper too slowly.

Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn kàn.

你看报看得太慢了。请你快一点看。

You are reading the newspaper too slowly. Please read a bit faster.

4. Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le.

你说英文说得太快了。

You are speaking English too fast.

Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn shuō.

你说英文说得太快了。请你慢一点说。

You are speaking English too fast. Please speak a bit slower.

5. Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le.

你开车开得太快了。

You are driving too fast.

Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.

你开车开得太快了。请你慢一点开。

You are driving too fast. Please drive a bit slower.

6. Nǐ mài piào màide tài màn le.

你卖票卖得太慢了。

You are buying the ticket too slowly.

Nǐ mài piào màide tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn mài.

你卖票卖得太慢了。请你快一点卖。

You are buying the ticket too slowly. Please, buy a bit quicker.

7. Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén shuōde tài màn le.

你说中文说得太慢了。

You are speaking Chinese too slowly.

Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén shuōde tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn shuō.

你说中文说得太慢了。请你快一点说。

You are speaking Chinese too slowly. Please speak a bit quicker.

4. Wǒmen yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, láideji láibují?
我们有二十分钟，来得及来不及？
We have 20 minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue hěn jìn
很近
very near

Hěn jìn. You èrshífēn zhōng, láideji.
很近。有二十分钟，来得及。
It's very near. [If] we have 20 minutes, we can make it in time.

5. Wǒmen yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng, láideji láibují?
我们有十五分钟，来得及来不及？
We have 15 minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue tài yuǎn
太远
too far

Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng, láibují.
太远。就有十五分钟，来不及。
It's too far. [If] we have only ten minutes, we can't make it in time.

6. Wǒmen yǒu shífēn zhōng, láideji láibují?
我们有十分钟，来得及来不及？
We have ten minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue hěn jìn
很近
very near

Hěn jìn. You shífēn zhōng, láideji.
很近。有十分钟，来得及。
It's very near. [If] we have 10 minutes, we can make it in time.

7. Wǒmen yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, láideji láibují?
我们有二十分钟，来得及来不及？
We have 20 minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue

tài yuǎn

太远

too far

Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, lái bù jí.

太远。就有二十分钟，来不及。

It's too far. [If] we have only 20 minutes, we can't make it in time.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.
请慢一点开。
Please drive a little slower.

Bié kāi zhème kuài!
别开这么快！
Don't drive so fast!

2. Qǐng kuài yídiǎn zǒu.
请快一点走。
Please walk a little quicker.

Bié zǒu zhème màn!
别走这么慢！
Don't walk so slowly!

3. Qǐng màn yídiǎn shuō.
请慢一点说。
Please speak a little slower.

Bié shuō zhème kuài!
别走这么快！
Don't speak so quickly!

4. Qǐng kuài yídiǎn kāi.
请快一点开。
Please drive a little quicker.

Bié kāi zhème màn!
别开这么慢！
Don't drive so slowly!

5. Qǐng kuài yídiǎn kàn.
请快一点看。
Please read a little quicker.

Bié kàn zhème màn!

别看这么慢！

Don't read so slowly!

6. Qǐng màn yìdiǎn shuō.

请慢一点说。

Please speak a little slower.

Bié shuō zhème kuài!

别走这么快！

Don't speak so quickly!

7. Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn zǒu.

请快一点走。

Please walk a little quicker.

Bié zǒu zhème màn!

别走这么慢！

Don't walk so slowly!

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒmen láidejí.
我们来得及。
We can make it in time.

Cue qǐng
请
please

Wǒmen láidejí. Qǐng nǐ màn yídiǎn kāi.
我们来得及。请你慢一点开。
We can make it in time. Please drive a little slower.

2. Wǒmen láidejí.
我们来得及。
We can make it in time.

Cue bié
别
don't

Wǒmen láidejí. Bié kāi nàme kuài!
我们来得及。别开那么快！
We can make it in time. Don't drive so fast!

3. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān.
我们有时间。
We have time.

Cue qǐng
请
please

Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Qǐng nǐ màn yídiǎn kāi.
我们有时间。请你慢一点开。
We have time. Please drive a bit slower.

4. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān.

我们有时间。

We have time.

Cue

bié

别

don't

Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Bié kāi nàme kuài!

我们来不及。别开那么快！

We have time. Don't drive so fast!

5. Wǒmen láidejí.

我们来不及。

We can make it in time.

Cue

qǐng

请

please

Wǒmen láidejí. Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.

我们来不及。请你慢一点开。

We can make it in time. Please, drive a bit slower.

6. Wǒmen láidejí.

我们来不及。

We can make it in time.

Cue

bié

别

don't

Wǒmen láidejí. Bié kāi nàme kuài!

我们来不及。别开那么快！

We can make it in time. Don't drive so fast!

7. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān.

我们有时间。

We have time.

Cue

qǐng

请

please

Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.

我们来得及。请你慢一点开。

We have time. Please drive a bit slower.

4. Èrshí kuài.

二十块。

Twenty dollars.

Cue

shí

+

10

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng nǐ zhǎo shíkuài qián.

这是三十块。请你找十块钱。

Here's 30 dollars. Please give me ten dollars [in] change.

5. Èrshiwǔ kuài.

二十五块

Twenty five dollars.

Cue

bù

不

no

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

这是三十块。不用找了。

Here's Keep the change.

6. Èrshíyī kuài.

二十一块。

Twenty one dollars.

Cue

jiǔ

九

9

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng nǐ zhǎo jiukuài qián.

这是三十块。请你找九块钱。

Here's 30 dollars. Please give me nine dollars [in] change.

7. Èrshíbā kuài.

二十八块。

Twenty eight dollars.

Cue

bù

不

no

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

这是三十块。不用找了。

Here's Keep the change.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.

请你银行停一下。

Please stop at that bank for a moment.

2. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

càishichǎng

菜市场

vegetable market

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige càishichǎng tíng yíxià.

你在那个菜市场停一下。

Please stop at that vegetable market for a moment.

3. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

diànyǐngyuàn

电影院

movie theater

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige diànyǐngyuàn tíng yíxià.

你在那个电影院停一下。

Please stop at that movie theater for a moment.

4. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

shūdiàn

书店

bookstore

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige shūdiàn tíng yíxià.

请你在那个书店停一下。

Please stop at that bookstore for a moment.

5. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

xuéxiào

学校

school

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige xuéxiào tíng yíxià.

请你在那个学校停一下。

Please stop at that school for a moment.

6. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

fàndiàn

饭店

restaurant

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige fàndiàn tíng yíxià.

请你在那个饭店停一下。

Please stop at that restaurant for a moment.

7. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.

请你在那个银行停一下。

Please stop at that bank for a moment.

Unit 4

References

Reference List

1. A: **Wo xiǎng qù Tánán wán jǐtiān.**
我想去臺南玩幾天。
I'm thinking of going to **Tánán** to relax for a few days.
2. A: **Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?***
坐公路局行不行？
Would it be all right to take the bus?
B: **Dào Tánán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbian.**
到臺南去坐公路局不大方便。
To go to **Tánán**, it's not very convenient to take the bus.
3. C: **Shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne?**
是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？
Is it better to go by train or to go by bus?
D: **Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.**
坐火車去好。
It's better to go by train.
4. E: **Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne?**
你說是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？
Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?
F: **Dào Tánán zuò huǒchē zuì fāngbian.**
到臺南坐火車最方便。
To **Tánán**, it's most convenient to take the train.
5. A: **Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?**
得先買票嗎？
Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?
B: **Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.**
你最好兩三天以前去買票。
It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.
6. A: **Zuò Gōnglùjú yě děi xiān mǎi piào ma?**
坐公路局也得先買票嗎？
If I take the bus, is it also necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?
B: **Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.**

- 不必先買票。
It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.
7. B: Nǐ yào zuò shěnmé shíhoude chē?
你要坐什麼時候的車?
What train do you want to take?
- A: Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.
我要坐上午的車。
I want to take a morning train.
8. B: Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu màiwán le.
對不起，上午票都賣完了。
I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.
9. chuán
船
boat, ship
10. dìtiě
地鐵
subway (abbreviation for dìxià tiědào)
11. dìxià huǒchē
地下火車
underground train, subway
12. wán (wánr)
玩 (玩兒)
to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself
13. -wán
完
to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)

Vocabulary

bú bì	不必	not necessary, don't have to
chuán	船	boat, ship
dìtiě	地鐵	subway (abbreviation for dìxià tiědào)
dìxià huǒchē	地下火車	underground train, subway
fāngbian	方便	to be convenient
Gōnglùjú	公路局	Bureau of Highways (Taiwan)
huǒchē	火車	train
liǎngsān-	兩三	two or three
màiwán le	賣完了	to be sold out
wán (wánr)	玩 (玩兒)	to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself
-wán	完	to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)
xiān	先	ahead of time, beforehand
zuì hǎo	最好	it would be best to
huá chuán	划船	to row a boat
sàn bù	散步	to take a walk
shān	山	hill, mountain
shuǐ	水	rivers, lakes (literally, "water")
yóuyǒng	游泳	to swim

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Wo xiǎng qù Táiánán wán jǐtiān.**
我想去臺南玩幾天。
I'm thinking of going to **Táiánán** to relax for a few days.

The basic meaning of the verb **wán** is “to play.” It is often best translated into English as “to relax,” “to enjoy oneself.”

Notes on №2

2. A: **Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?***
坐公路局行不行？
Would it be all right to take the bus?
B: **Dào Táiánán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbiàn.**
到臺南去坐公路局不大方便。
To go to **Táiánán**, it's not very convenient to take the bus.

Gōnglùjú, “the Bureau of Highways” in Taiwan, is the agency which administers the island’s intercity bus system. The phrase **zuò Gōnglùjú** means “to take a Bureau of Highways bus.” This phrasing is analogous to “I’m going by Greyhound.” In talking about the buses themselves, you would have to say **Gōnglùjúde chē**, “the buses of the Bureau of Highways”:

Gōnglùjúde chē hěn shūfu.

公路局的車很舒服。

The buses of the Bureau of Highways are very comfortable. (**shūfu**, “to be comfortable”)

Sentences containing both **dào** and **zuò** phrases: The **zuò** phrase usually comes first in a sentence with both a prepositional phrase expressing destination (**dào...**) and a prepositional phrase expressing means of conveyance (**zuò...**). However, if the destination is being stressed, the **dào** phrase may be placed at the beginning of the sentence, in the topic position. (See the second sentence in exchange 2.)

Tā měitiān zuò gōnggòng qìchē dào xuéxiào lái.

他每天坐公共汽車到學校來。

He rides the bus to school every day.

Dào yínháng qù, tā bú zuò gōnggòng qìchē. Tā zǒu lù qù.

到銀行去，他不坐公共汽車。她走路去。

To go to the bank, he doesn’t take the bus. He walks there,

Bú dà might also be translated as “not too,” “not so.”

Notes on №3

3. C: Shi zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne?
 是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？
 Is it better to go by train or to go by bus?
- D: Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.
 坐火車去好。
 It's better to go by train.

Shi...háishi: In a choice-type question, **shi** and **háishi** serve to mark off the choices more clearly. Below are some of the most common ways of asking the question “Do you want the red one or the yellow one?”

Nǐ yào hóngde, háishi yào huángde? (PREFERRED FORMS)

你要紅的，還是要黃的？

Nǐ shì yào hóngde, háishi yào huángde?

你是要紅的，還是要黃的？

Nǐ yào hóngde, huángde? (FAMILIAR, VERY COLLOQUIAL; NO PAUSE AT COMMA)

你要紅的，黃的？

Nǐ shì yào hóngde, shì yào huángde? (LEAST PREFERRED; shì UNSTRESSED HERE)

你是要紅的，是要黃的？

The marker **ne** clarifies the choices in a choice-type question. **Ne** may be placed after one or the other choice or after both choices.

Nǐ jīntiān qù ne, háishi míngtiān qù?

你今天去呢，還是明天去？

Are you going today or tomorrow?

Nǐ jīntiān qù, háishi míngtiān qù ne?

你今天去，還是明天去呢？

Nǐ jīntiān qù ne, shì míngtiān qù ne? (COMMUNICATES GENUINE PERPLEXITY).

你今天去呢，是明天去呢？

Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo: Here a whole phrase, which could also be a sentence, is used as the subject of the sentence.

Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.

坐火車去好。

ride train go good

Hǎo is translated here as “better,” not as “good.” Adjectival verbs used alone (i.e., not modified by words such as hěn and tài) usually express comparison.

Něige xuésheng hǎo?

哪個學生好？

Which student is better?

Shéi kuài?

誰快？

Who is faster?

Notes on №4

4. E: Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò Gōnglùjú qù hǎo ne?
 你說是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？
 Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?
- F: Dào Tánán zuò huǒchē zuì fāngbiàn.
 到臺南坐火車最方便。
 To Tánán, it's most convenient to take the train.

When nǐ shuō begins a question, the phrase is translated as “would you say” or “do you think.”

Notes on №5

5. A: Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?
 得先買票嗎？
 Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?
- B: Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.
 你最好兩三天以前去買票。
 It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.

The adverb xiān may sometimes be translated as “ahead of time,” “beforehand.”

Zuì hǎo, “best,” acts as an adverb in exchange 5, coming after the subject nǐ in the second sentence. Zuì hǎo is used to offer advice politely, not to warn a person that he had “better” or “best” do something.

Liǎngsāntiān: When approximate amounts, such as “two or three,” are given in Chinese, the numbers are read together, with no equivalent of “or.” This system is also used when two words are combined to indicate an approximate date.

sìwǔge rén

四五個人

four or five people

mínghòutiān
明後天
tomorrow or the day after
Qībāyuè
七八月
July or August

Liǎngsāntiān yǐqián: For “ahead of time,” “in advance,” **yǐqián** is used (instead of **xiān**) when the amount of time is stated. **Yǐqián** follows the word indicating the amount of time.

Nǐ děi xiān qù mǎi piào.
你得先去買票。
You have to go ahead of time to buy tickets.
Nǐ děi liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.
你得兩三天以前去買票。
You have to go two or three days ahead of time to buy tickets.

Notes on №6

6.	A:	Zuò Gōnglùjú yě děi xiān mǎi piào ma? 坐公路局也得先買票嗎？ If I take the bus, is it also necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?
	B:	Bú bì xiān mǎi piào. 不必先買票。 It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

Zuò Gōnglùjú, “if I take the bus”: The beginning of the first sentence in exchange 6 is translated with an “if” in English. Literally, the Chinese sentence is “Take the bus, also have to beforehand buy tickets?” In a sense the “if” part of the sentence is a kind of topic in Chinese, providing the setting for the second part of the sentence. In Chinese, the setting or condition can often be put in the topic position. In English, a particular word must be used to clarify the relationship of the first part of the sentence to the second part.

Zuò Gōnglùjú,....	If I take the bus,....
	When one takes the bus,....
	For taking the bus,....
	To take the bus,....

Bú bì, “not necessary,” “don’t have to,” is the phrase to use as the negative of the auxiliary **děi**, “must,” “have to.” **Děi** cannot be made negative.²

²“Must not” as in “You must not go” can be translated as **bù néng**: Nǐ bù néng qù.

Notes on №7

7. B: Nǐ yào zuò shěnmě shíhoude chē?
 你要坐什麼時候的車？
 What train do you want to take?
- A: Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.
 我要坐上午的車。
 I want to take a morning train.

Shěnmě shíhoude chē has been translated simply as “what train.” More literally, the phrase means “a train (arriving at) what time.”

Notes on №8

8. B: Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu màiwán le.
 對不起，上午票都賣完了。
 I’m sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.

Wán, “to end,” “to be over,” cannot take a direct object.

Wánle ma?
完了嗎？
Is it over?
Wánle meiyǒu?
玩了沒有？
Is it over yet?
Háiméi wán ne.
還沒完呢？
It isn’t over yet.

By itself, the expression *Wán le!* means “That’s all,” “There’s no more,” or “That’s it!” People often end speeches and recordings with *Wán le!*

Màiwán le, “to be sold out,” literally “sell finished”: Here is another example of a compound verb of result.

 **Note**

In DIR, Unit U, you learned *kànjian*, “to see,” literally “look-perceive.”

All examples which have been presented in this and previous modules occur with completion *le*.

Compound verbs of result communicate both the action being performed and its result. In compound verbs of result, the first verb indicates the action; and the second, the result. Not every action verb is used in compound verbs of result, nor are verbs indicating the result always predictable.

When *-wán* is used as an ending, it indicates finishing, as in *Wǒ hái méi shuōwán*, “I haven’t finished speaking yet,” or depletion, as in *màiwán le*, “sold out,” and *yòngwán le*, “used up.” In English, you might just say “finished,” without indicating what you have finished doing. In Chinese, the action which has been finished is usually mentioned.

Wǒ chīwán le.

我吃完了。

I have finished eating.

Wǒ huàwán le.

我畫完了。

I have finished drawing.

Wǒ kànwán le.

我看完了。

I have finished reading.

Wǒ hái méi shuōwán ne.

我還沒說完呢。

I have not finished talking yet.

Tā hái méi zuòwán ne.

他還沒做完呢。

He has not finished (doing something) yet.

Drills

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

Wǒ xiǎng qù Táinán wán jǐtiān.

我想去台南玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Táinán to relax for a few days.

2. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Xīnzhú

新竹

Xīnzhú

Wǒ xiǎng qù Xīnzhú wán jǐtiān.

我想去新竹玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Xīnzhú to relax for a few days.

3. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Jiāyì

嘉义

Jiāyì

Wǒ xiǎng qù Jiāyì wán jǐtiān.

我想去嘉义玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Jiāyì to relax for a few days.

4. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Wǒ xiǎng qù Gāoxióng wán jǐtiān.

我想去高雄玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Gāoxióng to relax for a few days.

5. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Huālián

花莲

Huālián

Wǒ xiǎng qù Huālián wán jǐtiān.

我想去花莲玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Huālián to relax for a few days.

6. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Táidōng

台东

Táidōng

Wǒ xiǎng qù Táidōng wán jǐtiān.

我想去台东玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Táidōng to relax for a few days.

7. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Táiběi

Wǒ xiǎng qù Táiběi wán jǐtiān.

我想去台北玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Táiběi to relax for a few days.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò Gōnglùjú.

坐公路局

Take the bus.

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

You: Dào Táinán qù zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?

到台南去坐公路局行不行？

To go to Táinán, would it be all right to take the bus?

2. Zuò huǒchē.

坐火车

Take the train.

Cue

Jiāyì

嘉义

Jiāyì

Dào Jiāyì qù zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?

到嘉义去坐火车行不行？

To go to Jiāyì, would it be all right to take the train?

3. Zuò zhídáchē.

坐直达车

Take the direct train.

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Dào Gāoxióng qù zuò zhídáchē xíng bu xíng?

到高雄去坐直达车行不行？

To go to Gāoxióng, would it be all right to take the direct train?

4. Zuò jìchéngchē.

坐计程车

Take the taxi.

Cue

Táidōng

台东

Táidōng

Dào Táidōng qù zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?

到台东去坐计程车行不行？

To go to Táidōng, would it be all right to take the taxi?

5. Zuò huǒchē.

坐火车

Take the train.

Cue

Huālián

花莲

Huālián

Dào Huālián qù zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?

到花莲去坐火车行不行？

To go to Huālián, would it be all right to take the train?

6. Zuò jìchéngchē

坐计程车

Take the taxi.

Cue

Jílóng

基隆

Jílóng

Dào Jílóng qù zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?

到基隆去坐计程车行不行？

To go to Jílóng, would it be all right to take the taxi?

7. Zuò Gōnglù jú.

坐公路局

Take the high way.

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

Táizhōng

Dào Táizhōng qù zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?

到台中去坐公路局行不行？

To go to Táizhōng, would it be all right to take the high way?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng bu xíng?

坐公共汽车行不行？

Would it be all right to take the bus?

Cue

kěshi bú dà

可是不大

not very convenient

Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng, kěshi bú dà fāngbian.

坐公共汽车行，可是不大方便。

It would be all right to take the bus, but it's not very convenient.

2. Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng bu xíng?

坐公共汽车行不行？

Would it be all right to take the bus?

Cue

zuì

最

Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng, zuì fāngbian.

坐公共汽车行，最方便。

It would be all right to take the bus; it's most convenient.

3. Zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?

坐火车行不行？

Would it be all right to take the train?

Cue

kěshi bú dà

可是不大

not very convenient

Zuò huǒchē xíng, kěshi bú dà fāngbian.

坐火车行，可是不大方便。

It would be all right to take the train, but it's not very convenient.

4. Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?
坐公路局行不行？
Would it be all right to take high way?

Cue zuì
最
most convenient

Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng, zuì fāngbian.
坐公路局行，最方便。
It would be all right to take the high way; it's most convenient.

5. Zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?
坐计程车行不行？
Would it be all right to take taxi?

Cue zuì
最

most convenient
Zuò jìchéngchē xíng, zuì fāngbian.
坐计程车行，最方便。
It would be all right to take the taxi; it's most convenient.

6. Zuò Sānlù chē xíng bu xíng?
坐三路车行不行？
Would it be all right to take the three-way car?

Cue kěshì bú dà
可是不大
not very convenient

Zuò Sānlù chē xíng, kěshì bú dà fāngbian.
坐三路车行，可是不大方便。
It would be all right to take the three-way car, but it's not very convenient.

7. Zuò Wǔlù chē xíng bu xíng?
坐五路车行不行？
Would it be all right to take five-way car?

Cue

zui

最

most convenient

Zuò Wǔlù chē xíng, zui fāngbian.

坐五路车行，最方便。

It would be all right to take the five-way car; it's most convenient.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò huǒchē hǎo bu hǎo?

坐火车好不好？

Is it all right to take the train?

Cue

Gōnglùjú

公路局

bus

Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò Gōnglùjú qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐火车去好呢，还是坐公路局去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?

2. Jīntiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?

今天去好不好？

Is it all right to go today?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Nǐ shuō, jīntiān qù hǎo ne, hái shì míngtiān qù hǎo ne?

你说，今天去好呢，还是明天去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go today or tomorrow?

3. Zuò Gōnglùjú hǎo bu hǎo?

坐公路局好不好？

Is it all right to take the bus?

Cue

jìchéngchē

计程车

taxi

Nǐ shuō shì zuò Gōnglùjú qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò jìchéngchē qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐公路局去好呢，还是坐计程车去好呢？

Would you say it's better to take the bus or a taxi?

4. Míngtiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?

明天去好不好？

Is it all right to go tomorrow?

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Nǐ shuō, míngtiān qù hǎo ne, hái shì hòutiān qù hǎo ne?

你说，明天去好呢，还是后天去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go tomorrow or the day after tomorrow?

5. Zuò huǒchē hǎo bu hǎo?

坐火车好不好？

Is it all right to take a train?

Cue

qìchē

汽车

car

Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò qìchē qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐火车去好呢，还是坐汽车去好呢？

Would you say it's better to take the train or the car?

6. Jīntiān qù hǎo hu hǎo?

今天去好不好？

Is it all right to go today?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Nǐ shuō, jīntiān qù hǎo ne, hái shì míngtiān qù hǎo ne?

你说，今天去好呢，还是明天去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go today or tomorrow?

7. Zuò fēijī hǎo hu hǎo?

坐飞机好不好？

Is it all right to take a plane?

Cue

huǒchē

火车

train

Nǐ shuō shì zuò fēijī qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐飞机去好呢，还是坐火车去好呢？

Would you say it's better to take a plane or the train?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Dei xiān mǎi piào.

得先买票。

It's necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

2. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

不必先买票。

It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

3. Děi xiān niàn Zhōngguó lìshǐ ma?

得先念中国历史吗？

Is it necessary to study Chinese history first?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Děi xiān niàn Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

得先念中国历史。

It's necessary to study Chinese history first.

4. Děi xiān zuò Yílù chē ma?

得先坐一路车吗？

Is it necessary to take the one way?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān zuò Yílù chē.

不必先坐一路车。

It's not necessary to take the one way.

5. Děi xiān dào Xīdān ma?

得先到西单吗？

Is it necessary to go to Xīdān first?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Děi xiān dào Xīdān.

得先到西单。

It's necessary to go to Xīdān first.

6. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?

得先还钱吗？

Is it necessary to change money ahead of time?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān huàn qián.

不必先还钱。

It's not necessary to change money ahead of time.

7. Děi xiān qù kàn gēge ma?

得先去看哥哥吗？

Is it necessary to see the older brother first?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān qù kàn gēge.

不必先去看哥哥。

It's not necessary to see the older brother first.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

liǎngsāntiān

两三天

2 or 3 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián mǎi piào.

你最好两三天以前买票。

It would be best for you to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.

2. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

bù

不

no

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

不必先买票。

It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

3. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy your tickets ahead of time?

Cue

liǎngtiān

两天

2 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngtiān yǐqián mǎi piào.

你最好两天以前买票。

It would be best for you to buy your tickets two days ahead of time.

4. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?

得先还钱吗？

Is it necessary to change money ahead of time?

Cue

sìwǔtiān

四五天

4 or 5 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo sìwǔtiān yǐqián huàn qián.

你最好四五天以前还钱。

It would be best for you to change money 4 or 5 days ahead of time.

5. Děi xiān qù kàn gēge ma?

得先去看哥哥吗？

Is it necessary to see the older brother ahead of time?

Cue

bù

不

no

Bú bì xiān qù kàn gēge.

不必先去看哥哥。

It's not necessary to see the older brother ahead of time.

6. Děi xiān kàn zhèběn shū ma?

得先看这本书吗？

Is it necessary to read this book ahead of time?

Cue

sāntiān

三天

3 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo sāntiān yǐqián kàn zhèběn shū.

你最好三天以前看这本书。

It would be best for you to read this boob three days ahead of time.

7. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?

得先还钱吗？

Is it necessary to change money ahead of time?

Cue

bù

不

no

Bú bì xiān huàn qián.

不必先还钱。

It's not necessary to change money ahead of time.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要坐什么时候的车？

What train do you want to take?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

morning

Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.

我要坐上午的车。

I want to take a morning train.

2. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?

你要坐几点钟的车？

What time do you want to take the bus?

Cue

xiàwǔ 2:10

下午 2 : 10

after noon at 2:10

Wǒ yào zuò xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn shífēnde chē.

我要坐下午两点十分的车。

I want to take the afternoon train at 2:10.

3. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要坐什么时候的车？

What train do you want to take?

Cue

wǎnshang

晚上

evening

Wǒ yào zuò wǎnshangde chē.

我要坐晚上的车。

I want to take an evening train.

Cue

xiàwǔ

下午

after noon

Wǒ yào zuò xiàwǔde chē.

我要坐下午的车。

I want to take an afternoon train.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐngwèn, shàngwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，上午的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the morning train?

Qǐngwèn, shàngwǔde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，上午的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the morning trains all sold out?

2. Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，到台南去的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still train tickets to Táinán?

Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，到台南去的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the train tickets to Táinán all sold out?

3. Qǐngwèn, míngtiān shàngwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，明天上午的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the afternoon train?

Qǐngwèn, míngtiān shàngwǔde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，明天上午的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the morning trains all sold out?

4. Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，到花莲去的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still train tickets to Huālián?

Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，到花莲去的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the train tickets to Huālián all sold out?

5. Qǐngwèn, jīntiān xiàwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，今天下午的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the today train?

Qǐngwèn, jīntiān xiàwǔde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyou?

请问，今天下午的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the today trains all sold out?

6. Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyou?

请问，到高雄去的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still train tickets to Gāoxióng?

Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyou?

请问，到高雄去的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the train tickets to Gāoxióng all sold out?

7. Qǐngwèn, míngtiānde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyou?

请问，明天的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the tomorrow train?

Qǐngwèn, míngtiānde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyou?

请问，明天的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the tomorrow trains all sold out?

Unit 5

References

Reference List

1. A: **Wo yě xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.**
我也想到南京去看看。
I would also like to go to **Nánjīng** to look around.
B: **Nǐ jìhua nǐtiān qù?**
你計劃那天去？
What day do you plan to go?
A: **Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.**
明天或是後天去都可以。
Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.
2. A: **Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?**
上海離南京有多元。
How far is **Shànghǎi** from **Nánjīng**?
B: **Yǒu liǎngbǎiwǔshíduō gōnglǐ.**
有兩百五十多公里。
It's over 250 kilometers.
3. A: **Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshǎo shíhou?**
坐火車要走多少時候。
How long does it take to go by train?
B: **Dàgài yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.**
大概要走四個半小時。
It probably takes four and a half hours.
4. C: **Yào zǒu bànge xiǎoshí.**
要走半個小時。
It takes half an hour.
5. B: **Nǐ jìhua zài Nánjīng zhù jǐtiān?**
你計劃在南京住幾天？
How many days do you plan to stay in **Nánjīng**?
A: **Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo. Nǐ shuō liǎngtiān gòu bu gòu?**
這是我第一次到南京去。以前沒去過。你說兩天夠不夠？

		This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng . I haven't gone there before. Would you say two days are enough?
	B:	Liǎngtiān gòu le. 兩天夠了。 Two days are enough.
6.	A:	Měitiān yǒu jǐtàng chē? 每天有幾趟車？ How many trips are there each day?
	A:	Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē? 下午有沒有車？ Are there trains in the afternoon?
	A:	Wǒ xīwàng xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. 我希望下午離開這兒。 I hope to leave here in the afternoon.
7.	*B:	Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yìbān tèkuài. 十三點零五分有一班特快。 There's an express at 1305.
8.	**B:	Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yìtàng tèkuài. 十三點零五分有一趟特快。 There's an express at 1305.
9.		dāsuan 打算 to plan to
10.		huòzhě (huòzhe) 或者 or (alternate form of huòshi)
11.		yǐhòu 以後 afterwards, later on, in the future
12.		zhōngtóu 鐘頭 hour (alternate word for xiǎoshi)

Vocabulary

bàn	半	half (followed by a counter or a noun which does not take a counter)
-cì	次	occasion, time
dàgài	大概	probably, approximately
dǎsuàn (dǎsuan)	打算	to plan to
dìyíci (dìyíci)	第一次	the first time
-duō	多	over, more than
gōnglǐ	公里	kilometer
gòu	夠	to be enough
huòshi	或是	or
huòzhě (huòzhe)	或者	or
jìhua	計劃	to plan to
kànkān	看看	to see, to look around, to sight-see, to visit
líkāi	離開	to leave
-tàng	趟	(counter for bus trips, train trips, etc.)
tèkuài	特快	express train
xiǎoshí	小時	hour
xīwàng (xīwang)	希望	to hope
yào	要	must, to have to; to take (a certain amount of time)
yǐhòu	以後	afterwards, later on; in the future
yǐqián	以前	before, in the past
zhōngtóu	鐘頭	hour
biéde dìfang	別的地方	other places (cf. <i>bièrén</i> , “other people”)
cānguān	參觀	to visit as an observer
duōshao hào	多少號	what size (shoe)
gōngchǎng	工廠	factory
juédìng	決定	to decide
yìshuāng píxié	一雙皮鞋	a pair of leather shoes
yòu hǎo yòu piányi	又好又便宜	both good and inexpensive

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Wo yě xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkān.**
我也想到南京去看看。
I would also like to go to Nánjīng to look around.
- B: **Nǐ jìhuà nǎitiān qù?**
你計劃那天去？
What day do you plan to go?
- A: **Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.**
明天或是後天去都可以。
Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.

Kànkān, “to have a look”: In exchange 1, **kànkān** refers to doing some sight-seeing. The reduplicated verb form implies an indefinite amount of sight-seeing, best translated into English as “to have a look,” “to look around.”

Huòshì (alternate, **huòzhě**) is used for “or” when both alternatives are acceptable or possible.

Wǒ qù mǎi yìdiǎnr pījiǔ huòshì mǎi yìdiǎnr qìshuǐ.

我去買一點兒啤酒或是後天來看你嗎？

I will go to buy some beer or some soft drinks.

Tā míngtiān huòshì hòutiān lái kàn nǐ ma?

他明天或是後天來看你嗎？

Is he coming to see you tomorrow or the day after? (i.e., sometime during the next two days)

Háishi is used for “or” when a choice is required between the alternatives.

Nǐ mǎi pījiǔ háishi mǎi qìshuǐ?

你買啤酒還是買汽水？

Are you buying beer or (are you buying) soft drinks?

Nǐ xǐhuan dàde háishi xǐhuan xiǎode?

你喜歡大的還是喜歡小的？

Do you like the large one or (do you like) the small one?

Do you like the large one or (do you like) the small one?

Notes on №2

2. A: **Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?**

上海離南京有多元。
How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?
B: 有兩百五十多公里。
It's over 250 kilometers.

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duo yuǎn? Yǒu is used in expressing the distance between two points.

Shànghǎi	lí	Nánjīng	yǒu	duō	yuǎn?
上海	離	南京	有	多	遠?
Shànghǎi	be separated from	Nánjīng	here is	how much	distance?

“How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?”

Tianjin	lí	Běijīng	yǒu	120	gōnglǐ.
天津	離	北京	有	120	公里。
Tiānjīn	be separated from	Běijīng	there is	120	kilometers.

“Tianjin is 120 kilometers from Běijīng.”

Liǎngbǎi wǔshíduō gōnglǐ: Approximate numbers may be expressed by adding -duō to number phrases. When added immediately after a number, before the counter,³ -duō refers to an indefinite amount within the range of the round number.

liǎngbǎiduō gōnglǐ
兩百多公里
more than 200 kilometers (but fewer than 300)
yìqiānduōge xuésheng
一千多個學生
more than 1,000 students (but fewer than 2,000)
sānshíduōkuài qián
三十多塊錢
more than 30 dollars (but fewer than 40)

Beginning with 20, -duō may be used in this way with any round number.

With round numbers from 20 through 90, -jǐ may be used instead of -duō.

èrshíduōge rén	more than 20 persons (but fewer than 30)
二十多個人	
èrshíjǐge rén	
二十幾個人	

³Gōnglǐ is one of the nouns used without a counter.

sishiduō gōnglǐ	more than 40 kilometers (but fewer than 50)
四十多公里	
sishījǐ gōnglǐ	
四十幾公里	

With the number 10, -jǐ only is used, never -duō.

shíjǐkuài qián
十幾塊
more than 10 dollars (but fewer than 20)

Notes on №3-4

3.	A:	Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou? 坐火車要走多少時候。 How long does it take to go by train?
	B:	Dàgài yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí. 大概要走四個半小時。 It probably takes four and a half hours.
4.	C:	Yào zǒu bànge xiǎoshí. 要走半個小時。 It takes half an hour.

The auxiliary verb **yào**, “to want,” is sometimes used as “to need to,” “to have to.” (See the first sentence in exchange 3.)

Zuò huǒchē	yào zǒu	duōshao shíhou?
坐火車	要走多	少時候。
ride train	have to go	how much time?

“How long does it take to go by train?”

Yào may also be used as a main verb meaning “to take [a certain amount of time]”:

Zuò huǒchē	yào	duōshao shíhou?
坐火車	要	少時候。
ride train	takes	how much time?

“How long does it take by train?”

Bàn-, “a half (of),” is used like a number—before a counter or before a noun which does not require a counter.

bànge xiǎoshí	half an hour
半個小時	

bànniǎn	half a year
半年	
bànge píngguǒ	half an apple
半個蘋果	

Sige bàn: When **bàn** FOLLOWS a counter or a noun not requiring a counter, the word is translated as “and a half.”

liǎngkuài bàn
兩塊半
two and a half dollars
sāntiān bàn
三天半
three and a half days
yíge bàn xiǎoshí
一個半小時
one and a half hours

Xiǎoshí: Formerly, the Chinese considered that one day and night (24 hours) was divided into twelve 2-hour periods of time. Each of these time periods was divided into two **xiǎoshí**, “small hours,” when telling time by the Western 24-hour system gained popularity throughout the world.

Notes on №5

5. B: Nǐ jìhuà zài Nánjīng zhù jǐtiān?
你計劃在南京住幾天?
How many days do you plan to stay in Nánjīng?
- A: Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo. Nǐ shuō liǎngtiān gòu bu gou?
這是我第一次到南京去。以前沒去過。你說兩天夠不夠?
This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before. Would you say two days are enough?
- B: Liǎngtiān gòu le.
兩天夠了。
Two days are enough.

Gòu le: The last sentence in exchange 5 ends with the new-situation marker **le**. This marker is used to describe what a situation is, was, or will be AT A SPECIFIED TIME. The travel agent says that, when the visit has lasted two days, THEN it will be long enough.

Notes on №6

6. A: Měitiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?
 每天有幾趟車？
 How many trips are there each day?
- A: Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?
 下午有沒有車？
 Are there trains in the afternoon?
- A: Wǒ xīwàng xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.
 我希望下午離開這兒。
 I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Jítàng: The counter **-tàng** is used when the trip mentioned is not a particular one, scheduled at a certain time. Similarly, it can also be used to talk about the number of trips a person has made, or will make.

Líkāi, “to leave,” may be followed by an object (the place). On the other hand, **zǒu,** “to leave,” is never followed by an object.

Nǐ shénme shíhou líkāi zhèr?

你什麼時候離開這兒？

When are you leaving here?

Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

你什麼時候走？

When are you leaving?

Notes on №7-8

7. B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yībān tèkuài.
 十三點零五分有一班特快。
 There's an express at 1305.
8. B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yītàng tèkuài.
 十三點零五分有一趟特快。
 There's an express at 1305.

Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn: For train and bus schedules, a 24-hour clock is commonly used in China, beginning with 1 A.M. and continuing to midnight, or 24:00.

12-hour clock		24-hour clock	
zǎoshàng shídiǎn	10 a.m.	shídiǎn	1000
早上十點		十點	
xiàwǔ yìdiǎn	1 p.m.	shísāndiǎn	1300

12-hour clock		24-hour clock	
下午一點		十三點	
xiàwǔ wǔdiǎn	5 p.m.	shìqīdiǎn	1700
下午五點		十七點	
wǎnshàng shídiǎn	10 p.m.	èrshíèrdiǎn	2200
晚上十點		二十二點	

Líng is included to indicate the zero in “1305.”

Tèkuài is an abbreviation for tèbié kuàichē, “special express train.”

Yībān and yítàng, counters for trips made by trains, buses, planes, and other conveyances, are sometimes interchangeable.

Drills

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ dāsuan dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.
我打算到南京去看看。
I'm planning to go to Nánjīng to look around.

Cue něitiān
哪天
what day

Nǐ dāsuan něitiān qù?
你打算哪天去
What day do you plan to go?

2. Wǒ xiǎng dào Xīān qù kànkàn.
我想到西安去看看。
I'm planning to go to Xīān to look around.

Cue jǐyuè
几月
what month

Nǐ xiǎng jǐyuè qù?
你想几月去?
What month do you plan to go?

3. Wǒ jìhuà dào Húběi qù kànkàn.
我计划到湖北去看看。
I'm planning to go to Huéběi to look around.

Cue xīngqījǐ
星期几
what day of the week

Nǐ jìhuà xīngqījǐ qù?

你想星期几去？

What day of the week do you plan to go?

4. Wǒ dǎsuan dào Shànghǎi qù kànkàn.

我打算到上海去看看。

I'm planning to go to Shànghǎi to look around.

Cue

jǐhào

几号

what date

Nǐ dǎsuan jǐhào qù?

你打算几号去？

What date do you plan to go?

5. Wǒ jìhuà dào Sūzhōu qù kànkàn.

我计划到苏州去看看。

I'm planning to go to Sūzhōu to look around.

Cue

jǐyuè

几月

what month

Nǐ jìhuà jǐyuè qù?

你计划jǐyuè去？

What month do you plan to go?

6. Wǒ xiǎng dào Běijīng qù kànkàn.

我想到北京去看看。

I'm planning to go to Běijīng to look around.

Cue

něitiān

哪天

what day

Nǐ xiǎng něitiān qù?

我想哪天去？

What day do you plan to go?

7. Wǒ dǎsuan dào Wūchāng qù kànkàn.

我打算到武昌去看看。

I'm planning to go to **Wǔchāng** to look around.

Cue

xīngqījǐ

星期几

what day of the week

Nǐ dāsuan xīngqījǐ qù?

你打算星期几去。

What day of the week do you plan to go?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ dǎsuan shénme shíhou dào Nánjīng qù?

你打算什么时候到南京去？

When are you planning to visit Nánjīng?

Cue

xiàge yuè

下个月

next month

Wǒ dǎsuan xiàge yuè dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.

我打算下个月到南京去看看。

I'm planning to visit Nánjīng next month.

2. Nǐ jìhua jǐyuè dào Shànghǎi qù?

你计划几月到上海去？

What month are you planning to visit Shànghǎi?

Cue

liùyuè

六月

in June

Wǒ jìhua liùyuè dào Shànghǎi qù kànkàn.

我计划六月到上海去看看。

I'm planning to visit Shànghǎi in June.

3. Nǐ xiǎng nǐtiān dào Guǎngzhōu qù?

你想哪天到广州去？

What day are you planning to visit Guǎngzhōu?

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Wǒ xiǎng hòutiān dào Guǎngzhōu qù kànkàn.

我想后天到广州去看看。

I'm planning to visit Guǎngzhōu the day after tomorrow.

Cue

sāndiǎn zhōng

三点钟

at 3 o'clock

Wǒ dāsuan sāndiǎn zhōng dào tā nèr qu kànkàn.

我打算三点钟到他那儿去看看。

I'm planning to visit his place at 3 o'clock.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ jìhuà nǎitiān qù?
你计划哪天去?
What day do you plan to go?

Cue Xīngqīèr
星期二
Tuesday

Xīngqīèr huòzhě Xīngqīsān, dōu kěyǐ.
星期二或者星期三，都可以。
Tuesday and [or] Wednesday are both possible.

2. Nǐ jìhuà nǎitiān qù?
你计划哪天去?
What day do you plan to go?

Cue wǔhào
五号
the fifth

Wǔhào huòzhě liùhào, dōu kěyǐ.
五号或者六号，都可以。
The fifth or the sixth, both are possible.

3. Nǐ xiǎng jǐyuè qù?
你想几月去?
What month do you plan to go?

Cue Wǔyuè
五月
May

Wǔyuè huòzhě Liùyuè, dōu kěyǐ.
五月或者六月，都可以。
May or June, both are possible.

4. Nǐ xiǎng nèinián qù?

你想哪年去？

What year do you plan to go?

Cue
1977
1977
1977

Yījiǔqīqī huòzhě Yījiǔqībā, dōu kěyǐ.

一九七七或者一九七八，都可以。

1977 or 1978, both are possible.

5. Nǐ dāsuan shénme shíhou qù?

你打算什么时候去？

When do you plan to go?

Cue
xiàyuè sìhào
下月四号
The fourth of next month

Xiàyuè sìhào huòzhě xiàyuè wǔhào, dōu kěyǐ.

下月四号或者下月五号，都可以。

The fourth or the sixth of next month, both are possible.

6. Nǐ dāsuan jǐdiǎn zhōng qù?

你打算几点钟去？

What time do you plan to go?

Cue
shàngwù shídiǎn
上午十点
10:00 a.m.

Shàngwù shídiǎn huòzhě shàngwù shíyīdiǎn, dōu kěyǐ.

上午十点或者上午十一点，都可以。

10:00 a.m. or 11:00 a.m., both are possible.

7. Nǐ jìhuà jǐhào qù?

你计划几号去？

What date do you plan to go?

Cue

èrshiqī

二十七

the Twenty-seventh

Èrshiqíhào huòzhě èrshíbáhào, dōu kěyǐ.

二十七号或者二十八号，都可以。

The Twenty-seventh or the Twenty-eighth, both are possible.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yuǎn ma?
上海离南京远吗?
Is Shànghǎi far from Nánjīng?

Cue duō yuǎn
多远
how far

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duōyuǎn?
上海离南京有多远?
How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?

2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yuǎn ma?
上海离南京远吗?
Is Shànghǎi far from Nánjīng?

Cue duōshǎo
多少
how many

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duōshǎo gōnglǐ?
上海离南京有多少公里?
How many kilometers is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?

3. Běijīng lí Tiānjīn yuǎn ma?
北京离天津远吗?
Is Běijīng far from Tiānjīn?

Cue duó yuǎn
多远
how far

Běijīng lí Tiānjīn yǒu duōyuǎn?
北京离天津有多远?
How far is Běijīng from Tiānjīn?

4. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yuǎn ma?

北京离上海远吗？

Is Běijīng far from Běijīng?

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?

北京离上海有多少公里？

How many kilometers is Běijīng from Běijīng?

5. Nánjīng lí Běijīng yuǎn ma?

南京离北京远吗？

Is Nánjīng far from Běijīng?

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Nánjīng lí Běijīng yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?

南京离北京有多少公里？

How many kilometers is Nánjīng from Běijīng?

6. Guǎngzhōu lí Wǔhàn yuǎn ma?

广州离武汉远吗？

Is Guǎngzhōu far from Wǔhàn?

Cue

duó yuǎn

多远

how far

Guǎngzhōu lí Wǔhàn yǒu duōyuǎn?

广州离武汉多远？

How far is Guǎngzhōu far from Wǔhàn?

7. Shànghǎi lí Hángzhōu yuǎn ma?

上海离杭州远吗？

Is Shànghǎi far from Hángzhōu?

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Shànghǎi lí Hángzhōu yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?

上海离杭州有多少公里？

How many kilometers is Shànghǎi from Hángzhōu?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duó yuǎn?

上海离南京有多远？

How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?

Cue

dàgài 270

大概 270

about 270

Dàgài yǒu èrbǎiqīshí gōnglǐ.

大概有二百七十公里。

It's probably 270 kilometers.

2. Tiānjīn lí Běijīng yǒu duó yuǎn?

天津离北京有多远？

How far is Tiānjīn from Běijīng?

Cue

80 duō

80 多

more than 80

Dàgài lí Běijīng yǒu bāshíduō gōnglǐ.

大概离北京有八十多公里。

It's probably more than 80 kilometers.

3. Běijīng lí Hángzhōu yǒu duó yuǎn?

北京离杭州有多远？

How far is Běijīng from Hángzhōu?

Cue

900 duō

900 多

more than 900

Dàgài lí Hángzhōu yǒu jiǔbǎiduō gōnglǐ.

大概离杭州有九百多公里。

It's probably more than 900 kilometers.

4. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duó yuǎn?

北京离上海有多远？

How far is Běijīng from Shànghǎi?

Cue

dàgài 800

大概 800

about 800

Dàgài yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.

大概有八百公里。

It's probably about 800 kilometers.

5. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duó yuǎn?

南京离上海有多远？

How far is Nánjīng from Shànghǎi?

Cue

dàgài 200

大概二百

about 200

Dàgài yǒu èrbǎi gōnglǐ.

大概有二百公里。

It's probably about 200 kilometers.

6. Wūhàn lí Běijīng yǒu duó yuǎn?

武汉离北京有多远？

How far is Wūhàn from Běijīng?

Cue

700 duō

700 多

more than 700

Dàgài lí Běijīng yǒu qībǎiduō gōnglǐ.

大概离北京有七百多公里。

It's probably more than 700 kilometers.

7. Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu duó yuǎn?

杭州离上海有多远？

How far is Hángzhōu from Shànghǎi?

Cue

170 duō

170 多

more than 170

Dàgài lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎiqīshíduō gōnglǐ.

大概离上海有一百七十多公里。

It's probably more than 170 kilometers.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

Cue

méi

没

isn't less

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng méiyǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京没有三百公里。

Shànghǎi isn't [is less than] 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

Cue

dàgài

大概

probably

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng dàgài yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京大概有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is probably 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

3. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Běijīng.

Cue

duō

多

more than

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎiduō gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百多公里。

Shànghǎi is more than 300 kilometers from Běijīng.

4. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu yìqiān gōnglǐ.
北京离上海有一千公里。
Běijīng is 1000 kilometers from Shànghǎi

Cue méi
没
isn't less

Běijīng lí Shànghǎi méiyǒu yìqiān gōnglǐ.
北京离上海没有一千公里。
Běijīng isn't [is less than] 1000 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

5. Wūhàn lí Běijīng yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.
武汉离北京有八百公里。
Wūhàn is 800 kilometers from Běijīng

Cue dàgài
大概
probably

Wūhàn lí Běijīng dàgài yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.
武汉离北京大概有八百公里。
Wūhàn is probably 800 kilometers from Běijīng.

6. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu èrbǎi gōnglǐ.
南京离上海有二百公里。
Nánjīng is 200 kilometers from Shànghǎi

Cue duō
多
more than

Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu èrbǎiduō gōnglǐ.
南京离上海有二百多公里。
Nánjīng is more than 200 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

7. Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu yìbǎi gōnglǐ.
杭州离上海有一百公里。
Hángzhōu is 100 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

Cue

duō

多

more than

Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎiduō gōnglǐ.

杭州离上海有一百多公里。

Hángzhōu is more than 100 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

4. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐtiān?

坐火车要走几天？

does it take by train?

Cue

jǐge xīngqī

几个星期

how many weeks

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?

坐火车要走几个星期？

How many weeks does it take by train?

5. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?

坐火车要走几个星期？

How many weeks does it take by train?

Cue

jǐge xiǎoshí

几个小时

how many hours

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xiǎoshí?

坐火车要走几个小时？

How many hours does it take by train?

6. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xiǎoshí?

坐火车要走几个小时？

How many hours does it take by train?

Cue

duōshao tiān

多少天

how many days

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao tiān?

坐火车要走多少天？

How many days does it take by train?

7. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao tiān?

坐火车要走多少天？

How many days does it take by train?

Cue

jǐge xīngqī

几个星期

how many weeks

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?

坐火车要走几个星期？

How many weeks does it take by train?

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Yào zǒu bànge zhōngtóu.
要走半个钟头。
It takes half an hour.

Cue yī
—
1

Yào zǒu yíge bàn zhōngtóu.
要走一个半钟头。
It takes an hour and a half.

2. Yào zǒu bàntiān.
要走半天。
It takes half a day.

Cue sān
—
—
3

Yào zǒu sāntiān bàn.
要走三天半。
It takes three and a half days.

3. Yào zǒu bànge yuè.
要走半个月。
It takes half a month.

Cue èr
—
—
2

Yào zǒu liǎngge bàn yuè.
要走两个半月。
It takes 2 and a half months.

4. Yào zǒu bàngè xīngqī.
要走一个星期。
It takes half a week.

Cue yī
—
1

Yào zǒu yíge bàn xīngqī.
要走一个半星期
It takes a week and a half.

5. Yào zǒu bànnián.
要走半年。
It takes half a year.

Cue yī
—
1

Yào zǒu yínián bàn.
要走一年半。
It takes a year and a half.

6. Yào zǒu bàngè zhōngtóu.
要走半个钟头。
It takes half an hour.

Cue sì
四
4

Yào zǒu sìge bàn zhōngtóu.
要走四个半钟头。
It takes 4 and a half hours .

7. Yào zǒu bàngè yuè.
要走半个月。
It takes half a month.

Cue

yī

—

1

Yào zǒu yíge bàn yuè.

要走一个半月。

It takes a month and a half.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù.

这是我第一次到南京去。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng.

Cue

yǐhòu

以后

later

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐhòu hái yào qù.

这是我第一次到南京去。以后还要去。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. Later on I want to go again.

2. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù.

这是我第一次到南京去。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng.

Cue

yǐqián

以前

before

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.

这是我第一次到南京去。以前没去过。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before.

3. Zhè shì tā dìyīcì xué Zhōngguo huà.

这是他第一次学中国话。

This will be the first time I have studied Chinese.

Cue

yǐhòu

以后

later

Zhè shì tā dìyīcì xué Zhōngguo huà. Yǐhòu hái yào xué.

这是他第一次学中国话。以后还要学。

This will be the first time I have studied Chinese. Later on I want to study again.

4. Zhèi shì tā dìyīcì chī Zhōngguó fàn.

这是他第一次吃中国饭。

This will be the first time I have eaten Chinese food.

Cue yǐqián
以前
before

Zhè shì tā dìyīcì chī Zhōngguó fàn. Yǐqián méi chīguo.

这是他第一次吃中国饭。以前没吃过。

This will be the first time I have eaten Chinese food. I haven't eaten it before.

5. Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái.

这是我第一次到这儿来。

This will be the first time I have gone here.

Cue yǐhòu
以后
later

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. Yǐhòu hái yào lái.

这是我第一次到这儿来。以后还要来。

This will be the first time I have gone here. Later on I want to go again.

6. Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái.

这是我第一次到这儿来。

This will be the first time I have gone here.

Cue yǐqián
以前
before

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. Yǐqián méi lái guo.

这是我第一次到这儿来。以前没来过。

This will be the first time I have gone here. I haven't gone there before.

7. Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Měiguó qù.

这是我第一次到美国去。

This will be the first time I have gone to America.

Cue

yǐqián

以前

before

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Měiguó qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.

这是我第一次到美国去。以前没去过。

This will be the first time I have gone to America. I haven't gone there before.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ shuō lái liǎngtiān gòu bu gou?

你说来两天够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to come for two days?

Lái liǎngtiān gòu le.

来两天够了。

It would be enough to come for two days.

2. Nǐ shuō qù liǎngtiān gòu bu gou?

你说去两天够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to go for two days?

Qù liǎngtiān gòu le.

说去两天够了。

It would be enough to go for two days.

3. Nǐ shuō xué liǎngniánde Zhōngwén gòu bu gou?

你说学两年的中文够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to study Chinese for 2 years?

Xué liǎngniánde Zhōngwén gòu le.

学两年的中文够了。

It would be enough to study Chinese for 2 years.

4. Nǐ shuō zhù sānge yuè gòu bu gou?

你说住三个月够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to stay for 3 months?

Zhù sānge yuè gòu le.

住三个月够了。

It would be enough to stay for 3 months.

5. Nǐ shuō niàn jiǔge xīngqī gòu hu gou?

你说念九个星期够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to study for 9 weeks?

Niàn jiǔge xīngqī gòu le.

念九一个星期够了。

It would be enough to study for 9 weeks.

6. Nǐ shuō dào nèr qù wánr shítiān gòu bu gou?

你说到那儿去玩儿十天够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to go there for 10 days?

Wánr shítiān gòu le.

玩儿十天够了。

It would be enough to go there for 10 days?

7. Nǐ shuō zǒu yíge zhōngtóu gòu bu gou?

你说走一个钟头够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to walk for one hour?

Zǒu yíge zhōngtóu gòu le.

走一个钟头够了。

It would be enough to walk for one hour.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望下午离开这儿。

I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Cue

Xiàwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

下午有几趟车？

How many trains are there in the afternoon

Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xiàwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望下午离开这儿。下午有几趟车？

I hope to leave here in the afternoon. How many trains are there in the afternoon?

2. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望下午离开这儿。

I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Cue

Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?

下午有没有车？

Is there a train in the afternoon?

Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?

我希望下午离开这儿。下午有没有车？

leave here in the afternoon. Is there a train in the afternoon?

3. Wǒ xīwang wǎnshàng líkāi zhèr.

我希望晚上离开这儿。

I hope to leave here in the morning.

Cue

Wǎnshàng yǒu jǐtàng chē?

晚上有几趟车？

How many trains are there in the evening?

Wǒ xīwang wǎnshàng líkāi zhèr. Wǎnshàng yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望晚上离开这儿。晚上有几趟车？

I hope to leave here in the morning. How many trains are there in the evening?

4. Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīsān líkāi zhèr.

我希望星期三离开这儿。

I hope to leave here on Wednesday.

Cue

Xīngqīsān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

星期三有几趟车？

How many trains are there on Wednesday?

Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīsān líkāi zhèr. Xīngqīsān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望星期三离开这儿。星期三有几趟车？

I hope to leave here on Wednesday. How many trains are there on Wednesday?

5. Wǒ xīwang míngtiān líkāi zhèr. Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望明天离开这儿。

I hope to leave here tomorrow.

Cue

Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

明天有几趟车？

How many trains are there tomorrow?

Wǒ xīwang míngtiān líkāi zhèr. Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望明天离开这儿。明天有几趟车？

I hope to leave here tomorrow. How many trains are there tomorrow?

6. Wǒ xīwang jīntiān shàngwǔ líkāi zhèr. Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?

我希望离今天上午开这儿。

I hope to leave here this morning.

Cue

Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?

上午有没有车？

Is there a train in the morning?

Wǒ xīwang jīntiān shàngwǔ líkāi zhèr. Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?

我希望离今天上午开这儿。上午有没有车？

I hope to leave here this morning. Is there a train in the morning?

7. Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望星期五离开这儿。

I hope to leave here on Friday.

Cue

Xīngqīwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

星期五有几趟车？

How many trains are there on Friday?

Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xīngqīwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望星期五离开这儿。星期五有几趟车？

I hope to leave here on Friday. How many trains are there on Friday?

Unit 6

References

Reference List

1. A: **Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?**
幾點鐘開？
What time does it leave?
B: **híbādiǎn wūshiwǔfēn fā chē.**
十八點五十五分發車。
It departs at 1855.
A: **Nà hǎo.**
那好。
That's fine.
2. B: **Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.**
請你把你的護照和旅行證給我。
Please give me your passport and travel permit.
A: **Hǎo, gěi ni.**
好，給你。
Okay, here it is.
3. A: **Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?**
到上海去的車在第幾站臺？
On which platform is the train to **Shànghǎi**?
B: **Zài dìyī zhàntái.**
在第一站臺。
It's on Platform Number 1.
4. B: **Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne.**
不用急。還早呢。
No need to be anxious. It's still early.
B: **Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.**
你先在這個接待室休息休息。
First, rest a bit in this waiting room.
5. A: **Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnmé bàn? Shì bu shì kéyǐ náshàng chē qu?**
我這件行李怎麼辦？是不是可以拿上車去？
What should I do about this suitcase of mine? May I take it onto the train?
B: **Kéyǐ bǎ xíngli náshàng chē qu.**

- 可以把行李拿上車去。
You may take the suitcase onto the train.
6. A: Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?
這班車有餐車吧？
This train has a dining car, I suppose?
- B: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.
有。有中餐，也有西餐。
Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food.
- A: Hǎojíle.
好極了。
Great.
7. C: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.
下一站就是上海了。
The next station is Shànghǎi.
- C: Kuài yào dào zhàn le.
快要到站了。
We are about to arrive at the station.
- C: Nín zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.
您準備下車了。
Please get ready to get off the train.
8. bān
搬
to move
9. náshàngqu
拿上去
to take up
náshànglai
拿上來
to bring up
náxiàqu
拿下去
to take down
náxiàlai
拿下來
to bring down
10. pǎo
跑
to run
11. wǎn

12.	<p>晚 to be late yuètai</p> <p>月臺 train platform (alternate word for zhàntái. more common in Taiwan)</p>
-----	---

Vocabulary

bān	搬	to move (e.g., furniture) (new house)
bàn	辦	to handle, to manage, to do
cānchē	餐車	dining car
fā chē	發車	to depart (from the first terminal of a train route)
hǎojíle	好極了	to be wonderful, to be great
hé	和	and
hùzhào	護照	passport
jí	急	to be anxious
jiēdàishì (jiēdàishī)	接待室	waiting room
-jíle	極了	extremely, awfully
kāi	開	to leave
kuài	快	soon
lǚxíngzhèng	旅行證	travel permit
ná	拿	to pick up, to hold, to take
náshànglai	拿上來	to bring up
náshàngqu	拿上去	to take up
náxiàlai	拿下來	to bring down
náxiàqu	拿下去	to take down
pǎo	跑	to run
wǎn	晚	to be late
Xīcān	西餐	Western food
xiūxi	休息	to rest, to relax
yào	要	will, going to
yuètái	月臺	train platform
zǎo	早	to be early
zhàntái	站臺	train platform
Zhōngcān	中餐	Chinese food
zhǔnbèi	準備	to prepare, to get ready
bāng	幫	to help
bú yào	不要	don't
láilai-wǎngwǎng	來來往往	coming and going

qǐdiǎnzhàn	起點站	station where a train originates (literally, “starting station”)
shūfu	舒服	to be comfortable

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?
幾點鐘開?
What time does it leave?
- B: híbādiǎn wūshiwǔfēn fā chē.
十八點五十五分發車。
It departs at 1855.
- A: Nà hǎo.
那好。
That's fine.

Kāi and **fā chē**: When referring to trains, the verb **kāi**, “to start,” means “to start off” or “to leave.” The technical term **fā chē**, “to send out the train,” is used in reference to a train which is departing from the terminal at the beginning of a trip, or line.

Notes on №2

2. B: Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.
請你把你的護照和旅行證給我。
Please give me your passport and travel permit.
- A: Hǎo, gěi ni.
好，給你。
Okay, here it is.

Hé, “and,” is a common alternate to **gēn**. Both **hé** and **gēn** are used as “and” between nouns.

Bǎ nǐde hùzhào...: The prepositional verb **bǎ** points out the direct objects (passport and travel permit) and brings those objects to the beginning of the sentence, preceding the main verb. Without this construction, a “traffic jam” of sentence elements would follow that verb.

Notes on №3

3. A: Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?
到上海去的車在第幾站臺?
On which platform is the train to **Shànghǎi**?
- B: Zài dìyī zhàntái.
在第一站臺。
It's on Platform Number 1.

Notes on №4

4. B: **Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne.**
不用急。還早呢。
No need to be anxious. It's still early.
- B: **Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.**
你先在這個接待室休息休息。
First, rest a bit in this waiting room.

In exchange 4, the aspect marker **ne** emphasizes that there has been no change in the situation.

Tā zài zhèr ne.

他在這兒呢。

He is here.

When the adverb **hái**, “still,” “yet,” is used, the sentence very often ends with the marker **ne**.

Míngtiān wǒ hái bù zǒu ne.

明天我還不走呢。

I am not leaving tomorrow (yet), (i.e., I will still be here tomorrow.)

Verb reduplication: In Unit 3 of the Money Module, you learned that reduplication is one way to indicate ASPECT, although markers are more common. INDEFINITENESS is the aspect expressed when an action verb is reduplicated. The speaker does not commit himself to the duration or extent of the action.

In the last sentence of № the speaker asks the listener to “rest a bit.” Instead of using additional words to indicate a short duration, the speaker reduplicates the verb, **xiūxi**, expressing some duration, but of no particular limit.

To reduplicate a two-syllable verb, simply repeat the whole verb. The repetition is unstressed, or even toneless: **xiūxi xiūxi**

Xiān: Since this use of “first” is not followed by an explicit “afterwards,” **xiān** might also be translated as “for the time being” or “right now.”

Wǒ xiān zǒu le, nǐmen mànmanr chī ba.

我先走了，你們慢慢兒吃吧。

Right now I'm going to excuse myself; you take your time eating.

Nǐ xiān bié jí, mànmanr zhǎo.

你先別急，慢慢兒找。

For the time being, don't be anxious; take your time looking for it.

Notes on №5

5. A: **Wǒ zhèjiàn xínglǐ zěnmé bàn? Shì bu shì kěyǐ náshàng chē qu?**
我這件行李怎麼辦？是不是可以拿上車去？

What should I do about this suitcase of mine? May I take it onto the train?
 B: **Kéyǐ bǎ xínglǐ náshàng chē qu.**
可以把行李拿上車去。
 You may take the suitcase onto the train.

Zěnmě bàn means something like “how should [something] be managed” or “what should be done [about something].”

Náshàng chē qu, “take onto the train,” is a COMPOUND VERB OF DIRECTION which has been separated by a noun object. Ná is the verb “to pick up,” “to hold,” “to take,” “to bring.” The directional endings -shàng, “up,” “onto,”* and qù, “to go,” tell you that the action takes place up and away from the speaker.

 **Note**

You have seen shàng used as several different parts of speech:

shàng lóu	上樓	to go up (FULL verb)
shàng chē	上車	to get on (FULL verb)
shàngbianr	上邊兒	upper, above (IN PLACE WORDS)
shàngge yuè	上個月	last, previously (SPECIFIER)
zài chēshàng	在車上	on (LOCATIONAL ENDING [with nouns])
náshàngqu	拿上去	up, onto (DIRECTIONAL ENDING [with verbs])
ná shàng qu	拿上去	(hold up/onto away)
		“to take up/onto”

Compound verbs of direction are easily formed, as shown in the chart below. The first column contains action verbs you have learned which may be used. The endings in the middle column are relatively few. For the second part of the directional ending, only lái and qù may be used.

ACTION	Plus	DIRECTION
ná (to carry)	-shàng (up)	lái (towards)
拿	上	來

ACTION	Plus	DIRECTION
<i>zǒu</i> (to walk/go)	- <i>xià</i> (down)	<i>qù</i> (away)
走	下	去
<i>bān</i> (to move)	- <i>chū</i> (out)	
搬	出	
<i>pǎo</i> (to run)	- <i>jìn</i> (in)	
跑	進	
<i>kāi</i> (to drive)	- <i>huí</i> (back)	
開	回	

(AND OTHERS)

Compound verbs of direction may be two or three syllables: *chūqu*, “to go out”; *zǒuchūqu*, “to walk out”

It is possible to split up a two-part directional ending by placing an object or location before the final *lái* or *qù*.

<i>náshang chē qu</i>
拿上車去
take onto the train/bus
<i>náchu yìběn shū lái</i>
拿出一本書來
bring out a book
<i>xià lóu qu</i>
下樓去
go downstairs

A direct object (such as *nèiběn shū*) may be placed EITHER at the beginning of a sentence, using *bǎ*, OR later in the sentence, splitting up the directional ending. Locations which are the goal of the action (such as *chē* and *lóu* above) MUST be placed between the two parts of the directional ending.

Bǎ xíngli náshang chē qu: In the last sentence of exchange 5, the direct object, *xíngli*, is placed before the verb. The location of the action, *chē*, is placed before the final *qu*. When both a location and a direct object occur in a sentence with a multisyllabic directional verb, the location is placed between the two syllables of the directional ending, and the direct object is moved closer to the beginning of the sentence.

Notes on №6

6. A: *Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?*

這班車有餐車吧？

This train has a dining car, I suppose?

B: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.

有。有中餐，也有西餐。

Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food.

A: Hǎojíle.

好極了。

Great.

The ending *-jíle*, meaning “extremely,” “awfully,” may be added to adjectival verbs.

Nèige píngguo dàjíle.

那個蘋果大幾了。

That apple is huge.

Zuò huǒchē fāngbiānjíle.

坐火車方便極了。

Riding the train is extremely convenient.

Tā zǒude kuàijíle.

他走得快極了。

He walks awfully fast.

-jíle is seldom used in Taiwan.

Notes on №7

7. C: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.

下一站就是上海了。

The next station is Shànghǎi.

C: Kuài yào dào zhàn le.

快要到站了。

We are about to arrive at the station.

C: Nín zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

您準備下車了。

Please get ready to get off the train.

Kuài means “soon” in the second sentence of exchange 7. You have already learned another meaning for *kuài*: “to be fast”

In the sentence *Kuài yào dào zhàn le*, *yào* is an auxiliary verb meaning “will” or “to be going to.” Other meanings you have learned for *yào* are “to want,” “to need,” “to have to,” “to require.”

New-situation *le*: The aspect marker *le* for new situations occurs in the first two sentences of № 7. In *Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le*, the speaker uses *le* to communicate a change in the circumstances: after passing through many stations, *Shànghǎi* will finally be the next station.

When a speaker uses *le*, he is saying that something has changed in reference to him or in reference to the listener. In the first sentence in № 7, *Shànghǎi* itself has not changed, but what constitutes the “next station” for the speaker and the listener has changed.

In *Kuài yào dào zhàn le*, new-situation *le* marks a change which is about to take place—their arrival. Here are examples of references to future changes:

Tā míngnián jiù shísuì le.

他明年就十歲了。

He will be ten (years old) next year.

Wǒ zǒu le.

我走了。

I'm leaving now. (I'll be leaving now.)

Piào kuài yào mǎiwán le.

票快要賣完了。

The tickets will soon be sold out.

Many speakers of English have trouble with new-situation *le* because they would not think of using it when the Chinese do. Take note of situations which the Chinese consider to be changes, and try to use new-situation *le* in your speech.

Drills

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?
几点钟开?
What time does it leave?

Cue huǒchē
火车
train

Nèibān huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?
那班车几点钟开?
What time does that train leave?

2. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?
几点钟开?
What time does it leave?

Cue gōnglùjúde chē
公路局的车
highway Department's car

Nèibān gōnglùjúde chē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?
那班公路局的车几点钟开?
What time does the highway Department's car leave?

3. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?
几点钟开?
What time does it leave?

Cue gōnggòng qìchē
公共汽车
bus

Nèibān gōnggòng qìchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

那班公共汽车几点钟开？

What time does that bus leave?

4. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

几点钟开？

What time does it leave?

Cue

zhídáchē

直达车

direct train

Nèibān zhídáchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

那班直达车几点钟开？

What time does that direct train leave?

5. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

几点钟开？

What time does it leave?

Cue

tèkuài

特快

express

Nèibān tèkuài jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

那班特快几点钟开？

What time does that express leave?

6. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

几点钟开？

What time does it leave?

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Nèige yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

那个银行几点钟开门？

What time does the bank open?

7. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

几点钟开？

What time does it open?

Cue

yóuzhèngjú

邮政局

post office

Nèige yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

那个邮政局几点钟开门？

What time does the post office open?

4. Zuò shídiǎn wǔshífēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐十点五十分的车，来得及吗？

Can we make the 10:50 train?

Cue shì
是
yes

Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.

来得及，还早呢。

Don't worry. It's still early.

5. Zuò qīdiǎn wǔshífēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐七点五十分的车，来得及吗？

Can we make the 7:50 train?

Cue bù
不
no

Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le.

来不及，已经晚了。

We can't make it; we are already late.

6. Zuò sìdiǎn língwǔfēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐四点零五分的车，来得及吗？

Can we make the 4:05 train?

Cue shì
是
yes

Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.

来得及，还早呢。

Don't worry. It's still early.

7. Zuò liǎngdiǎn língbāfēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐两点零八分，来得及吗？

Can we make the 2:08 train?

Cue

bù

不

no

Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le.

来不及，已经晚了。

We can't make it; we are already late.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

在第几站台？

On which platform is it?

Cue

Shànghǎi

上海

Shànghǎi

Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

到上海去的车在第几站台？

On which platform is the train to Shànghǎi?

2. Zài disān zhàntái.

在第三站台。

On which platform is it?

Cue

Nánjīng

南京

Nánjīng

Dào Nánjīng qùde chē zài disān zhàntái.

到南京去的车在第三站台？

On which platform is the train to Nánjīng?

3. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

在第几站台？

On which platform is it?

Cue

Guǎngzhōu

广州

Guǎngzhōu

Dào Guǎngzhōu qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

到广州去的车在第几站台？

On which platform is the train to Guǎngzhōu?

4. Zài dièr zhàntái.
在第二站台。
On which platform is it?

Cue Tianjīn
天津
Tianjīn

Dào Tiānjīn qùde chē zài dièr zhàntái.
到天津去的车在第二站台？
On which platform is the train to Tianjīn?

5. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?
在第几站台？
On which platform is it?

Cue Qīngdǎo
青岛
Qīngdǎo

Dào Qīngdǎo qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?
到青岛去的车在第几站台？
On which platform is the train to Qīngdǎo?

6. Zài dìyī zhàntái.
在第一站台。
On which platform is it?

Cue Hángzhōu
杭州
Hángzhōu

Dào Hángzhōu qùde chē zài dìyī zhàntái.
到杭州去的车在第几站台？
On which platform is the train to Hángzhōu?

7. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?
在第几站台？
On which platform is it?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Dào Běijīng qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

到北京去的车在第几站台？

On which platform is the train to Běijīng?

Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèr xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在这儿休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest here a moment.

Cue zhèige dìfang
这个地方

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèige dìfang xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在这个地方休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest at this place a moment.

2. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèige dìfang xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在这个地方休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest at this place a moment.

Cue jiālǐ
家里

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiālǐ xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在家里休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest at home a moment.

3. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiālǐ xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在家里休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest at home a moment.

Cue fàndiànlǐ
饭店里

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài fàndiànlǐ xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在饭店里休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest in the restaurant place a moment.

4. Duibuqǐ, wǒ dēi zài fàndiànlǐ xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在饭店里休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest in the restaurant a moment.

Cue chēli
车里

Duibuqǐ, wǒ dēi zài chēli xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在车里休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest in the car a moment.

5. Duibuqǐ, wǒ dēi zài chēli xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在车里休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest in the car a moment.

Cue jiēdàishì
接待室

Duibuqǐ, wǒ dēi zài jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在接待室休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest in the waiting room a moment.

6. Duibuqǐ, wǒ dēi zài jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在接待室休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest in the waiting room a moment.

Cue zhèr
这儿

Duibuqǐ, wǒ dēi zài zhèr xiūxi xiūxi.
对不起，我得在这儿休息休息。
Excuse me, I must rest here a moment.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ zhèjiàn xíngli hái zài zhèr.

我这件行李还在这儿。

This suitcase of mine is still here.

Wǒ zhèjiàn xíngli hái zài zhèr. Zěnmē bàn?

我这件行李还在这儿。怎么办？

This suitcase of mine is still here. What should I do about it?

2. Tā yào dào nàr qù.

他/她要到那儿去。

He/she wants to go there.

Tā yào dào nàr qù. Zěnmē zǒu?

他/她要到那儿去。怎么走？

He/she wants to go there. How do I get there [go]?

3. Wǒ zhèxiē dōngxi hái zài zhèr.

我这些东西还在这儿。

These things of mine are still here.

Wǒ zhèxiē dōngxi hái zài zhèr. Zěnmē bàn?

我这些东西还在这儿。怎么办？

These things of mine are still here. What should I do about it?

4. Tā yào dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù.

他/她要到王府井大街去。

He/she wants to go to Wangfǔjǐng Boulevard.

Tā yào dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù. Zěnmē zǒu?

他/她要到王府井大街去。怎么走？

He/she wants to go to Wangfǔjǐng Boulevard. How does He/she get there [go]?

5. Wǒ nèixiē xíngli hái zài chēshàng.

我那些行李还在车上。

My luggage is still in his/her car.

Wǒ nèixiē xínglǐ hái zài chēshàng. Zěnmē bàn?

我那些行李还在车上。怎么办？

My luggage is still in his/her car. What should I do about it?

6. Tā yào dào Shànghǎi qù.

他/她要到上海去。

He/she wants to go to Shànghǎi.

Tā yào dào Shànghǎi qù. Zěnmē zǒu?

他/她要到上海去。怎么走？

He/she wants to go to Shànghǎi. How does He/she I get there [go]?

7. Wǒ zhèxiē zázhì hái méi màiwán.

我这些杂志还没卖完。

These magazines of mine are still unsold.

Wǒ zhèxiē zázhì hái méi màiwán. Zěnmē bàn?

我这些杂志还没卖完。怎么办？

These magazines of mine are still unsold. What should I do about it?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Tāmen yǒu Zhōngcān háishi Xīcān?
他们有中餐还是西餐？
Do they have Chinese food or Western food?

Cue yě
也
also

Tāmen yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.
他们有中餐也有西餐。
They have Chinese food and they also have Western food.

2. Tāmen yào zhèige háishi nèige?
他们要这个还是那个？
Do they want this or that?

Cue dōu
都

Zhèige, nèige, tāmen dōu yào.
这个，那个，他们都要。
They want both this and that.

3. Nǐmen mǎi zhuōzi háishi yǐzi?
你们买桌子还是椅子？
Do you buy a table or a chair?

Cue yě
也
also

Wǒmen mǎi zhuōzi, yě mǎi yǐzi.
你们买桌子也买椅子。
We buy a table and a chair.

4. Nǐmen mǎi pánzi háishi wǎn?

你们买盘子还是碗？

Do you buy plates or bowls?

Cue

dōu

都

all

Pánzi, wǎn, wǒmen dōu mǎi.

盘子，碗，我们都买。

Plates, bowls, we buy both.

5. Tāmen mài zhèige hóngde háishi nèige lánde?

他们卖这个红的还是那个蓝的？

Do they sell this red one or that blue one?

Cue

dōu

都

all

Hóngde, lánde, tāmen dōu mài.

红的，蓝的，他们都卖。

The red one, the blue one, they sell both.

6. Tāmen kàn zhèixiē zázhì háishi nèixiē bào?

他们看这些杂志还是那些报？

Do they read these magazines or those newspapers?

Cue

yě

也

also

Tāmen kàn zhèixiē zázhì, yě kàn nèixiē bào.

他们看这些杂志，也看那些报

They read these magazines, they read those newspapers too.

7. Nǐ niàn jīngjìxué háishi zhèngzhìxué?

你念经济学还是政治学。

Do you study economics or political science.

Cue

yě

也

also

Wǒ niàn jīngjìxué, yě niàn zhèngzhìxué.

我念经济学，也念政治学。

I study economics and I studied political science.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Kuài yào dào zhàn le.

快要到站了。

We are about to arrive at the station.

Kuài yào dào zhàn le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到站了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive at the station. Let's get ready to get off.

2. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Běijīng le.

下一站就是北京了。

The next stop is Beijing.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Běijīng le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

下一站就是北京了。我们准备下车吧。

The next stop is Beijing. Let's get ready to get off.

3. Kuài yào dào Tiānjīn le.

快要到天津了。

We are about to arrive in Tiānjīn.

Kuài yào dào Tiānjīn le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到天津了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive in Tiānjīn. Let's get ready to get off.

4. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Nánjīng le.

下一站就是南京了。

The next stop is Nánjīng.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Nánjīng le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

下一站就是南京了。我们准备下车吧。

The next stop is Nánjīng. Let's get ready to get off.

5. Kuài yào dào Hángzhōu le.

快要到杭州了。

We are about to arrive in Hángzhōu.

Kuài yào dào Hángzhōu le. Wǒmen zhùnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到杭州了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive in Hángzhōu. Let's get ready to get off.

6. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.

下一站就是上海了。

The next stop is Shànghǎi.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le. Wǒmen zhùnbèi xià chē ba.

下一站就是上海了。我们准备下车吧。

The next stop is Shànghǎi. Let's get ready to get off.

7. Kuài yào dào Guǎngzhōu le.

快要到广州了。

We are about to arrive in Guǎngzhōu.

Kuài yào dào Guǎngzhōu le. Wǒmen zhùnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到广州了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive in Guǎngzhōu. Let's get ready to get off.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā kéyǐ nǎshànglái ma?

他可以拿上来吗？

Can he bring it up?

Cue

chē

车

car

Tā kéyǐ nǎshàng chē lái ma?

他可以拿上车来吗？

Can he bring it in the car?

2. Tā kéyǐ nǎxiàlái ma?

他可以拿下来吗？

Can he bring it down?

Cue

lóu

楼

stairs

Tā kéyǐ nǎxià lóu lái ma?

他可以拿下楼来吗？

Can he bring it down the building?

3. Tā kéyǐ nǎshàngqù ma?

他可以拿上去吗？

Can he take it up?

Cue

huǒchē

火车

train

Tā kéyǐ nǎshàng huǒchē qù ma?

他可以拿上火车去吗？

Can he take it up to the train?

Cue

lóu

楼

stairs

Tā kěyǐ náshàng lóu qù ma?

他可以拿上楼去吗？

Can he take it upstairs?

Unit 7

References

Reference List

1. A: **Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?**
老宋，怎麼樣？忙呢？
Sòng, how are things going? Are you busy?
B: **Bù zěnmé máng. Nǐ yǒu shì ma?**
不怎麼忙。你有事嗎？
Not especially busy. Can I do something for you?
2. A: **Wǒ Sìyue Shísìhào yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào.**
我四月十四號要到廣州去。請你給我訂一張飛機票。
I'm going to **Guǎngzhōu** on April 14. Please reserve a plane ticket for me.
B: **Hǎo.**
好。
Sure.
3. B: **Piào dìnghǎo le.**
票訂好了。
The ticket has been reserved.
A: **Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?**
那班飛機？幾點鐘起飛。
Which flight? What time does it take off?
B: **Jiǔdiǎn shíwǔfēn qǐfēi.**
九點十五分起飛。
It takes off at 9:15.
4. A: **Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?**
這班飛機直飛廣州嗎？
Does this flight go directly to **Guǎngzhōu**?
B: **Shì, zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu.**
是，直飛廣州。
Yes, it flies directly to **Guǎngzhōu**.
5. A: **Cóng Sānlitún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?**
從三里屯到飛機場要多少時間？
How much time does it take to go from **Sānlitún** to the airport?

	B:	Yào sishí fēn zhōng. 要四十分鐘。 It takes forty minutes.
6.	A:	Rúguo wǒ bā diǎn zhōng lí kāi jiā, lái de jí ba? 如果我八點鐘離開家，來得及吧？ If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?
	B:	Lái de jí. 來得及。 Yes.
7.	A:	Qǐng nǐ míng tiān zǎo shàng pài ge chē lái jiē wǒ. 請你明天早上派個車來接我 Please send a car to pick me up tomorrow morning.
	B:	Hǎo. Wǒ míng tiān bā diǎn zhōng pài chē sòng nǐ dào fēi jī chǎng qù. 好。我明天八點鐘派車送你到飛機場去。 Okay. I'll send a car at eight o'clock tomorrow to take you to the airport.
8.		-hǎo le 好了 to be satisfactorily completed
9.		lǚ guǎn 旅館 hotel
10.		shuō hǎo le 說好了 to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
11.		xiǎng hǎo le 想好了 to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
12.		yào shì 要是 if (alternate word for <i>rúguǒ</i>)
13.		zuò hǎo le 做好了 to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished

Vocabulary

bù zěnmē	不怎麼	not especially, not particularly
dìng	訂	to reserve

dìnghǎo le	訂好了	to have (been) reserved
fēi	飛	to fly
fēijī	飛機	airplane
fēijīchǎng	飛機場	airport
Guǎngzhōu	廣州	(name of a city in the PRC—Canton)
-hǎo le	好了	to be satisfactorily completed
jiē	接	to meet/pick up/get (someone)
lǎo	老	to be old
lǚguǎn	旅館	in years hotel
máng	忙	to be busy
pài	派	to send/assign (a person to do something)
qǐfēi	起飛	to take off (airplane)
rúguǒ (rúguo)	如果	if
Sānlǐtún	三里屯	(a district in Běijīng where many Foreign diplomats and Chinese people from other countries live)
shuōhǎo le	說好了	to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
xiǎnghǎo le	想好了	to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
yàoshi	要是	if
zhí	直	directly
zuòhǎo le	做好了	to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished
chū chāi	出差	to go on a business trip
chùzhǎng	處長	division chief
gǎnbushàng	趕不上	won't be able to catch (a plane, train, etc.)
hái hǎo	還好	fairly good/well
kāi huì	開會	to attend a meeting/conference

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?
老宋，怎麼樣？忙呢？
Sòng, how are things going? Are you busy?
- B: Bù zěnmé máng. Nǐ yǒu shì ma?

不怎麼忙。你有事嗎？

Not especially busy. Can I do something for you?

The greeting *zěnmeyàng* is more informal than *nǐ hǎo*. *Zěnmeyàng* is used only if the two people already know each other.

Máng ne? and *Máng ma?* are translated into English as “Are you busy?” However, the two Chinese questions are not interchangeable. When a speaker asks the question *Máng ma?* he really wants to find out whether someone is busy. On the other hand, *Máng ne?* is an example of the Chinese custom of greeting a person by stating the obvious. The speaker is simply acknowledging the fact that the listener is busy. The question mark following *Máng ne?* shows that the speaker is inviting the listener to comment. You might think of *Máng ne?* as something like the English “Well, it looks like you are working hard,” which invites a response like “Sure am” or “Oh, I’m really not doing much of anything.”

Ne may be used in many sentences to comment on what the person being addressed is doing at the moment:

Chī fàn ne?
吃飯呢？
Having dinner, I see?
Zài zhèr ne?
在這兒呢？
Well, you’re here?
Mǎi dōngxi ne?
買東西呢？
Doing some shopping, eh?

These sentences are almost greetings in themselves.

The overall intonation of the question *Máng ma?* is higher than that of a statement. The intonation of *Máng ne?* is somewhat lower. Listen carefully to the tape.

Bù zěnmē may precede a state verb. The expression would then mean “not especially,” “not particularly.”

Wǒ bù zěnmē xǐhuan nàběn shū.
我不怎麼喜歡那本書。
I don’t particularly like that book.
Wǒ bù zěnmē qīngchu.
我不怎麼清楚。
I’m not particularly clear on this. (This isn’t very clear to me.)
Wǒ jīntiān bù zěnmē hǎo.
我今天不怎麼好。

I'm not particularly well today.

Tā bù zěnmē yǒu qián.

他不怎麼有錢。

He's not especially rich.

Wǒ bù zěnmē xiǎng qù.

我不怎麼想去。

I don't especially want to go.

Contrast *bù zěnmē* with *bú zěnmē*, “not as much as that”:

Wǒ bú zěnmē xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.

我不怎麼喜歡看電影兒。

I don't like to go to the movies that much, (i.e., as much as someone else just mentioned)

Wǒ bù zěnmē xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.

我不怎麼喜歡看電影兒。

I don't particularly like to go to the movies.

Notes on №2

2. A: Wǒ Sìyue Shísìhào yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ dīng yìzhāng fēijī piào.
我四月十四號要到廣州去。請你給我訂一張飛機票。
I'm going to *Guǎngzhōu* on April 14. Please reserve a plane ticket for me.
- B: Hǎo.
好。
Sure.

Notes on №3

3. B: Piào dīnghǎo le.
票訂好了。
The ticket has been reserved.
- A: Nēibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?
那班飛機？幾點鐘起飛。
Which flight? What time does it take off?
- B: Jiǔdiǎn shíwǔfēn qǐfēi.
九點十五分起飛。

It takes off at 9:15.

Dìnghǎo is a compound verb of result. When used as the final element in a compound verb of result, **hǎo** indicates that the action described by the initial verb has been brought to a successful conclusion.

The same form of the verb, **dìnghǎo**, is used to describe an object having something done to it and a person doing something to an object.

Piào dìnghǎo le.

票訂好了。

The ticket has been reserved.

Wǒ bǎ piào dìnghǎo le.

我把票訂好了。

I have reserved the ticket.

Here are additional examples of compounds with the result-ending **-hǎo**:

Wǒmen yǐjīng shuōhǎo le.

我們已經說好了。

We have already come to an agreement about it. (We have already talked it out to a conclusion.)

Nǐ xiǎnghǎo le meiyou?

你想好了沒有？

Have you reached a conclusion yet? (Have you thought it out to a conclusion yet?)

Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ jīntiān wǎnshàng yào chīde dōngxi zuòhǎo le.

我已經把今天晚上要吃的東西做好了。

I have already finished making the things we are going to eat tonight.

Nǐde xíngli zhǔnbèihǎo le ma?

你的行李準備好了嗎？

Is your luggage ready?

Notes on №4

4. A: Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?
這班飛機直飛廣州嗎？
Does this flight go directly to Guǎngzhōu?
- B: Shì, zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu.
是，直飛廣州。
Yes, it flies directly to Guǎngzhōu.

Zhèibān fēijī, “this flight”: In Chinese, the specifier **zhèi-** is used to refer to what has just been talked about. In English, “that” and “the” are used for the same purpose.

The adverb **zhí** is not used in as many situations as is its English translation, “directly,” “straight.” In other contexts, the word for “directly” or “direct” would be **zhíjiē**, and the word for “straight” would be **yìzhí**.

Notes on №5

5. A: **Cóng Sānlitún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?**
從三里屯到飛機場要多少時間？
How much time does it take to go from **Sānlitún** to the airport?
- B: **Yào sishífēn zhōng.**
要四十分鐘。
It takes forty minutes.

Notes on №6

6. A: **Rúguo wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba?**
如果我八點鐘離開家，來得及吧？
If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?
- B: **Láidejí.**
來得及。
Yes.

Rúguo is one of the commonest words in Chinese for “if.” Another widely used word for “if” is **yàoshi**. (See Additional Required Vocabulary, № 12.) You have already learned that the idea of “if” may be conveyed in Chinese without any special word:

Zuò Gōnglùjú de xiān mǎi piào ma?

坐公路局得先買票嗎？

If I take the bus, is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā láidejí ba?

八點鐘離開家來得及吧？

If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?

Notes on №7

7. A: **Qǐng ni míngtiān zǎoshang pài ge chē lái jiē wo.**
請你明天早上派個車來接我
Please send a car to pick me up tomorrow morning.
- B: **Hǎo. Wǒ míngtiān bādiǎn zhōng pài chē sòng ni dào fēijīchǎng qu.**
好。我明天八點鐘派車送你到飛機場去。
Okay. I'll send a car at eight o'clock tomorrow to take you to the airport.

The verb **pài** means “to send/assign someone [to do something].”

Ge: You have already learned that, when toneless, **yíge** means “a,” not “one.” In the first sentence of exchange 7, you see that **yíge** can be reduced to the one syllable **ge**. This reduction happens most frequently when “a” follows the sentence verb.

zhǎo ge ren
找個人
to look for someone (i.e., a person)
chī ge píngguǒ
吃個蘋果
to eat an apple

The verb **jiē** means “to meet,” as in “meeting someone at the station,” or “to get,” “to pick up,” as in “I’ll come by to get you (pick you up) about eight o’clock.”

Pài ge chē lái lái jiē wo, literally “send a car to come pick me up”: In English, “come” may be omitted. In Chinese, **lái** must separate the action (**pài ge chē**) from the purpose of the action (**jiē wo**). Either **lái** or **qù** may be used to mark purpose expressions, depending on the direction of the action.

The verb **sòng** means “to take/escort someone” in the last sentence of exchange 7. **Sòng** may also mean “to send” in the sense of “delivering an object,” in contrast with the verb **pài**, which means “to send a person.”

Qǐng pài ge rén dào wǒ jiā lái.
請派個人到我家來。
Please send a man over to my house.
Qǐng bǎ zhuōzi sòng dào wǒ jiā qù.
請把桌子送到我家去。
Please deliver the table to my house.

Notes on Additional Vocabulary

- | | |
|-----|---|
| 8. | -hǎo le
好了
to be satisfactorily completed |
| 9. | lǚguǎn
旅館
hotel |
| 10. | shuōhǎo le
說好了
to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on |
| 11. | xiǎnghǎo le |

	想好了	to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
12.	yàoshi	
	要是	if (alternate word for <i>rúguǒ</i>)
13.	做好了	to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished

Lǚguǎn is the general term for any kind of hotel. When following a verb or the prepositional verb *zài*, *lǚguǎn* may be followed by the locational ending *-li*, “in,” or there may be no locative ending. This is also the case with other place words naming institutions, business establishments, and organizations.

Tā zài zhèige lǚguǎnli (OR *zài zhèige lǚguǎn*) *zhùle liǎngge yuè.*

他在這個旅館裏 (OR 在這個旅館) 住了兩個月。

He stayed in this hotel for two months.

Vocabulary booster: animals

bear	<i>xióng</i>	熊
camel	<i>luòtuo</i>	駱駝
cat	<i>māo</i>	貓
chicken	<i>jī</i>	雞
cow	<i>niú</i>	牛
deer	<i>lù</i>	鹿
dog	<i>gǒu</i>	狗
donkey	<i>lú</i>	驢
duck	<i>yā</i>	鴨
elephant	<i>xiàng</i>	象
fish	<i>yú</i>	魚
fox	<i>húli</i>	狐狸
goat	<i>shānyáng</i>	山羊
horse	<i>mǎ</i>	馬
lion	<i>shīzi</i>	獅子
monkey	<i>hóuzi</i>	猴子
mouse/rat	<i>lǎoshǔ</i>	老鼠
panda	<i>xióngmǎo</i>	熊貓

pig	zhū	豬
sheep	yáng	羊
tiger	lǎohǔ	老虎
turkey	huǒjī	火雞
wolf	láng	狼

Drills

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng ni gěi wo mǎi yìzhāng chuán piào.

请你给我买一张船票。

Please buy one boat ticket for me.

Qǐng ni gěi wo dìng yìzhāng chuán piào.

请你给我订一张船票。

Please reserve one boat ticket for me.

2. Qǐng ni gěi Mǎ Xiānsheng mǎi liǎngzhāng huǒchē piào.

请你给马先生买两张火车票。

Please buy 2 train tickets for Mr. Mǎ.

Qǐng ni gěi Mǎ Xiānsheng dìng liǎngzhāng huǒchē piào.

请你给马先生订两张火车票。

Please reserve 2 train tickets for Mr. Mǎ.

3. Qǐng ni gěi Máo Tàitai mǎi yìzhāng gōnglùjúde chēpiào.

请你给毛太太买一张公路局的车票。

Please buy a ticket for Mrs. Máo from the Highway Department.

Qǐng ni gěi Máo Tàitai dìng yìzhāng gōnglùjúde chēpiào.

请你给毛太太订一张公路局的车票

Please reserve a ticket for Mrs. Máo from the Highway Department.

4. Qǐng ni gěi Lín Xiǎojiě mǎi sānzhāng zhídáchēde chēpiào.

请你给林小姐买三张直达车的车票。

Please buy three tickets for Miss Lín for the direct train.

Qǐng ni gěi Lín Xiǎojiě dìng sānzhāng zhídáchēde chēpiào.

请你给林小姐订三张直达车的车票

Please reserve three tickets for Miss Lín for the direct train.

5. Qǐng ni gěi Liú Nǚshì mǎi sānzhāng tèkuàichēde chēpiào.

请你给刘女士买三张特快车的车票。

Please buy three tickets for Ms. **Liu** for the express train.

Qǐng ni gěi Liu Nǚshì dīng sānzhāng tèkuàichēde chēpiào.

请你给刘女士订三张特快车的车票。

Please reserve three tickets for Ms. **Liu** for the express train.

6. Qǐng ni gěi Zhōu Xiānsheng mǎi liǎngzhāng fēijī piào.

请你给周先生买两张飞机票。

Please buy 2 plane tickets for Mr. **Zhōu**.

Qǐng ni gěi Zhōu Xiānsheng dīng liǎngzhāng fēijī piào.

请你给周先生订两张飞机票。

Please reserve 2 plane tickets for Mr. **Zhōu**.

7. Qǐng ni gěi Zhào Tàitai mǎi liǎngzhāng chuán piào.

请你给赵太太买两张船票。

Please buy 2 boat tickets for Mrs. **Zhào**.

Qǐng ni gěi Zhào Tàitai dīng liǎngzhāng chuán piào.

请你给赵太太订两张船票。

Please reserve 2 boat tickets for Mrs. **Zhào**.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù.
我要到广州去。
I want to go to Guǎngzhōu.

Cue huǒchē piào
火车票
train

Wǒ yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng huǒchē piào?
我要到广州去，可以不可以订一张火车票？
I want to go to Guǎngzhōu. May I reserve a train ticket?

2. Wǒ yào dào Běijīng qù.
我要到北京去。
I want to go to Běijīng.

Cue fēijī piào
飞机票
plane ticket

Wǒ yào dào Běijīng qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào?
我要到北京去，可以不可以订一张飞机票？
I want to go to Běijīng. May I reserve a plane ticket?

3. Wǒ yào dào Nánjīng qù.
我要到南京去。
I want to go to Nánjīng.

Cue tèkuàichēde piào
特快车的票
express train ticket

Wǒ yào dào Nánjīng qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng tèkuàichēde piào?
我要到南京去，可以不可以订一张特快车的票？
I want to go to Nánjīng. May I reserve a ticket for an express train?

4. Wǒ yào dào Qīngdǎo qù.

我要到青岛去。

I want to go to Qīngdǎo.

Cue

chuán piào#

船票

boat ticket

Wǒ yào dào Qīngdǎo qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dīng yìzhāng chuán piào?

我要到青岛去，可以不可以订一张船票？

I want to go to Qīngdǎo. May I reserve a boat ticket?

5. Wǒ yào dào Tiānjīn qù.

我要到天津去。

I want to go to Tiānjīn.

Cue

qìchē piào

汽车票

bus ticket

Wǒ yào dào Tiānjīn qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dīng yìzhāng qìchē piào?

我要到天津去，可以不可以订一张汽车票？

I want to go to Tiānjīn. May I reserve bus ticket?

6. Wǒ yào dào Hángzhōu qù.

我要到杭州去。

I want to go to Hángzhōu.

Cue

fēijī piào

飞机票

plane ticket

Wǒ yào dào Hángzhōu qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dīng yìzhāng fēijī piào?

我要到杭州去，可以不可以订一张飞机票？

I want to go to Hángzhōu. May I reserve a plane ticket?

7. Wǒ yào dào Sūzhōu qù.

我要到苏州去。

I want to go to Sūzhōu.

Cue

zhídáchēde piào

直达车票

direct train ticket

Wǒ yào dào Sūzhōu qù, kěyǐ bu keyǐ dìng yīzhāng zhídáchēde piào?

我要到苏州去，可以不可以订一张直达车票？

I want to go to Sūzhōu. May I reserve direct train ticket?

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuòhǎo le ma?

做好了嗎？

Have you finished doing it?

Cue

méi

沒

no

Méi zuòhǎo ne.

沒做好呢。

I haven't finished doing it.

2. Shuōhǎo le ma?

說好了嗎？

Have you finished saying it?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Shuōhǎo le.

說好了。

I finished saying it.

3. Xiǎnghǎo le ma?

想好了嗎？

Have you finished thinking about it?

Cue

kuài

快

soon

Kuài xiǎnghǎo le.

快想好了。

I'll finish thinking about it soon.

4. Dìnghǎo le ma?
订好了吗?
Have you finished order it?

Cue hái méi
还没
not yet

Hái méi dìnghǎo ne.
还没订好。
I haven't ordered it yet.

5. Shuōhǎo le ma?
说好了吗?
Have you finished saying it?

Cue méi
没
no

Méi shuōhǎo ne.
没说好呢。
I haven't said it yet.

6. Zuòhǎo le ma?
做好了么?
Have you finished doing it?

Cue kuài
快
soon

Kuài zuòhǎo le.
快做好了。
I'll finish it soon.

7. Xiǎnghǎo le ma?
想好了吗?
Have you finished thinking about it?

Cue

hái méi

还没

not yet

Hái méi Xiǎnghǎo ne

还没想好呢。

I haven't thought about it yet.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Nèibān fēijī?

哪班飞机？

Which flight?

Nèibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?

哪班飞机？几点钟起飞？

Which flight? What time does it take off?

2. Nèibān huǒchē?

哪班火车？

Which train?

Nèibān huǒchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班火车？几点钟开？

Which train? What time does it leave?

3. Nèibān qìchē?

哪班汽车？

Which bus?

Nèibān qìchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班汽车？几点钟开？

Which bus? What time does it leave?

4. Nèibān fēijī?

哪班飞机？

Which flight?

Nèibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?

哪班飞机？几点钟起飞？

Which flight? What time does it take off?

5. Nèibān zhídáchē?

哪班直达车？

Which direct train?

Něibān zhídáchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班直达车？几点钟开？

Which direct train? What time does it leave?

6. Něibān tèkuàichē?

哪班特快车？

Which express train?

Něibān tèkuàichē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班特快车？几点钟开？

Which express train? What time does it leave?

7. Něibān fēijī?

哪班飞机？

Which flight?

Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?

哪班飞机？几点钟起飞？

Which flight? What time does it take off?

Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?
这班飞机直飞广州吗？
Does this flight go directly to Guǎngzhōu?

Cue Nánjīng
南京
Nánjīng

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Nánjīng ma?
这班飞机直飞南京吗？
Does this flight go directly to Nánjīng?

2. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Nánjīng ma?
这班飞机直飞南京吗？
Does this flight go directly to Nánjīng?

Cue Shànghǎi
上海
Shànghǎi

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Shànghǎi ma?
这班飞机直飞上海吗？
Does this flight go directly to Shànghǎi?

3. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Shànghǎi ma?
这班飞机直飞上海吗？
Does this flight go directly to Shànghǎi?

Cue Běijīng
北京
Běijīng

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Běijīng ma?
这班飞机直飞北京吗？
Does this flight go directly to Běijīng?

4. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Běijīng ma?
这班飞机直飞北京吗？
Does this flight go directly to Běijīng?

Cue Wūhàn
武汉
Wūhàn

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Wūhàn ma?
这班飞机直飞武汉吗？
Does this flight go directly to Wūhàn?

5. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Wūhàn ma?
这班飞机直飞武汉吗？
Does this flight go directly to Wūhàn?

Cue Sūzhōu
苏州
Sūzhōu

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Sūzhōu ma?
这班飞机直飞苏州吗？
Does this flight go directly to Sūzhōu?

6. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Sūzhōu ma?
这班飞机直飞苏州吗？
Does this flight go directly to Sūzhōu?

Cue Qīngdǎo
青岛
Qīngdǎo

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Qīngdǎo ma?
这班飞机直飞青岛吗？
Does this flight go directly to Qīngdǎo?

7. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Qīngdǎo ma?
这班飞机直飞青岛吗？
Does this flight go directly to Qīngdǎo?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Běijīng ma?

这班飞机直飞北京吗？

Does this flight go directly to Běijīng?

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Cóng Sānlitún dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao shíjiān?
从三里屯到火车站要多少时间?
How much time does it take to go from Sānlitún to the train station?

Cue duōshao fēn zhōng
多少分钟
how many minutes

Cóng Sānlitún dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao fēn zhōng?
从三里屯到火车站要多少分钟?
How many minutes from Sānlitún to the train station?

2. Cóng Dōngdān dào Wǎngfǔjǐng Dàjiē yào duōshao shíjiān?
从东单到王府井大街要多少时间?
How many time does it take to go from Dōngdān to Wǎngfǔjǐng?

Cue duōshao shíhou
多少时候
how long

Cóng Dōngdān dào Wǎngfǔjǐng Dàjiē yào duōshao shíhou?
从东单到王府井大街要多少时候?
How long does it take to go from Dōngdān to Wǎngfǔjǐng?

3. Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Rìtánlù yào duōshao shíjiān?
从长安街到日坛路要多少时间?
How many time does it take to go from Chángān to Rìtánlù?

Cue jǐ fēn zhōng
几分钟
how many minutes

Cóng Chángān jiē dào Rìtánlù yào jǐ fēn zhōng?
从长安街到日坛路要几分钟?
How many minutes does it take to go from Chángān to Rìtánlù?

4. Cóng Běijīng dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao shíjiān?

从北京到广州要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Běijīng to Guǎngzhōu?

Cue

jǐtiān

几天

how many days

Cóng Běijīng dào Guǎngzhōu yào jǐtiān?

从北京到广州要几天？

How many days does it take to go from Běijīng to Guǎngzhōu?

5. Cóng Nánjīng dào Shànghǎi yào duōshao shíjiān?

从南京到上海要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Nánjīng to Shànghǎi?

Cue

duōshao xiǎoshí

多少小时

how many hours

Cóng Nánjīng dào Shànghǎi yào duōshao xiǎoshí?

从南京到上海要多少小时？

How many hours does it take to go from Nánjīng to Shànghǎi?

6. Cóng Hǎngzhōu dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao shíjiān?

从杭州到广州要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Hǎngzhōu to Guǎngzhōu?

Cue

duōshao xiǎoshí

多少小时

how many hours

Cóng Hǎngzhōu dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao xiǎoshí?

从杭州到广州要多少小时？

How many hours does it take to go from Hǎngzhōu to Guǎngzhōu?

7. Cóng Guānghuá lù dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao shíjiān?

从光华路到火车站要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Guānghuá lù to the train station?

Cue

duōshāofēn zhōng

多少钟

how many minutes

Cóng Guānghuá lù dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshāofēn zhōng?

从光华路到火车站要多少钟？

How many minutes does it take from Guānghuá Road to the train station?

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ma?

如果我八点钟离开家，来得及吗？

If I leave home at eight o'clock, can I make it?

Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, shénme shíhou dào?

如果我八点钟离开家，什么时候到？

If I leave home at eight o'clock, what time will I arrive?

2. Rúguǒ wǒ shídiǎn zhōng líkāi xuéxiào, láidejí ma?

如果我十点钟离开学校，来得及吗？

If I leave the school at 10 o'clock, can I make it?

Rúguǒ wǒ shídiǎn zhōng líkāi xuéxiào shénme shíhou dào?

如果我十点钟离开学校什么时候到？

If I leave the school at 10 o'clock, what time will I arrive?

3. Rúguǒ Lǐ Xiānsheng shíyīdiǎn shífēn líkāi Dàshìguǎn, láidejí ma?

如果李先生十一点十分离开大使馆，来得及吗？

If Mr. Lǐ leaves the embassy at 11 o'clock, can he make it?

Rúguǒ Lǐ Xiānsheng shíyīdiǎn shífēn líkāi Dàshìguǎn, shénme shíhou dào?

如果李先生十一点十分离开大使馆，什么时候到？

If Mr. Lǐ leaves the embassy at 11 o'clock, what time will he arrive?

4. Rúguǒ Zhāng Nǚshì shíyuè qīhào líkāi zhèlǐ, láidejí ma?

如果张女士十月七号离开这里，来得及吗？

If Mrs. Zhāng leaves in October, can she make it?

Rúguǒ Zhāng Nǚshì shíyuè qīhào líkāi zhèlǐ, shénme shíhou dào?

如果张女士十月七号离开这里，什么时候到？

If Mrs. Zhāng leaves in October, what time will she arrive?

5. Rúguǒ tā sìdiǎnbàn líkāi fàndiàn, láidejí ma?

如果他/他四点半离开饭店，来得及吗？

If he/she leaves the store at 4:30, can he/she make it?

Rúguǒ tā sìdiǎnbàn líkāi fàndiàn, shénme shíhòu dào?

如果他/他四点半离开饭店，什么时候到？

If he/she leaves the store at 4:30, what time will he/she arrive?

6. Rúguǒ nǐ zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ma?

如果早上七点钟离开家，来得及吗？

If you leave at 7 o'clock in the morning, can you make it?

Rúguǒ nǐ zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, shénme shíhòu dào?

如果早上七点钟离开家，什么时候到？

If you leave at 7 o'clock in the morning, what time will you arrive?

7. Rúguǒ tāmen xiànzài líkāi chēzhàn, láidejí ma?

如果他/他们现在离开车站，来得及吗？

If they leave the station now, can they make it?

Rúguǒ tāmen xiànzài líkāi chēzhàn, shénme shíhòu dào?

如果他/他们现在离开车站，什么时候到？

If they leave the station now, what time will they arrive?

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng ni lái jiē wo.

请你来接我。

Please pick me up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē wo.

请你派个车来接我。

Please send a car to pick me up.

2. Qǐng ni lái jiē ta.

请你来接他/他。

Please pick him/her up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē ta.

请你派个车来接他/他。

Please send a car to pick him/her up.

3. Qǐng ni qù jiē tamen.

请你去接他/他们。

Please go and pick them up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē qù jiē tamen.

请你派个车去接他/他们。

Please send a car to pick them up.

4. Qǐng ni qù jiē ta.

请你去接他/他。

Please go and pick them up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē qù jiē ta.

请你派个车去接他/他。

Please send a car to pick him/her up.

5. Qǐng ni sòng wo qù.

请你送我去。

Please drive me there.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē sòng wo qù.

请你派个车送我去。

Please send a car to take me there.

6. Qǐng ni lái jiē ta.

请你来接他/他。

Please pick him/her up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē ta.

请你派个车来接他/他。

Please send a car to pick him/her up.

7. Qǐng ni sòng tamen qù.

请你送他/他们去。

Please drive them there.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē sòng tamen qù.

请你派个车送他/他们去。

Please send a car to take them there.

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我送你到飞机场去。

I'll take you to the airport.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我派车送你到飞机场去。

I'll send a car to take you to the airport.

2. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào huǒchēzhàn qù.

我送你到火车站去。

I'll take you to the train station.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào huǒchēzhàn qù.

我派车送你到火车站去。

I'll send a car to take you to the train station.

3. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào Qìchēzhàn qù.

我送你到汽车站。

I'll take you to Qìchēzhàn.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào qìchēzhàn qù.

我派车送你到汽车站。

I'll send a car to take you to Qìchēzhàn.

4. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào tā jiā qù.

我送你到他家去。

I'll take you home.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào tā jiā qù.

我派车送你到他家去。

I'll send a car to take you home.

5. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào yínháng qù.

我送你到银行去。

I'll take you to the bank.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào yínháng qù.

我派车送你到银行去。

I'll send a car to take you to the bank.

6. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào Dàshǐguǎn qù.

我送你到大使馆去。

I'll take you to Dàshǐguǎn.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào dàshǐguǎn qù.

我派车送你到大使馆去。

I'll send a car to take you to Dàshǐguǎn.

7. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我送你到飞机场去。

I'll take you to the airport.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我派车送你到飞机场去。

I'll send a car to take you to the airport.

Unit 8

References

Reference List

1. B: Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?
好久不見，您出門了吧？
I haven't seen you for a long time, You have been away, I suppose?
A: Shì a, wǒ yòu dào Guǎngzhōu qu le.
是啊，我又到廣州去了。
Yes, I went to **Guǎngzhōu** again.
2. B: Nín wèishénme gāng huí lái, yòu qù le ne?
您爲什麼剛回來，又去了呢？
Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?
A: Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.
我這次到廣州去是因爲我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。
This time I went to **Guǎngzhōu** because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.
3. A: Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.
我們有一年沒見了。
We had not seen each other for a year.
A: Tā qǐng wǒ péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.
她請我陪她一起去旅行。
She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.
4. A: Sānge yuè yǐqián wǒ zài Guǎngzhōu, nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.
三個月以前我在廣州，那個時候她還不知道能不能來。
Three months ago, when I was in **Guǎngzhōu**, she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.
5. B: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?
你們都去過什麼地方？
What places did you go to?
A: Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, dōu qù le. Hángzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.
南京，上海，杭州，蘇州，都去了。杭州真是漂亮。
We went to **Nánjīng**, **Shànghǎi**, **Hángzhōu**, and **Sūzhōu**. **Hángzhōu** is really beautiful.
6. A: Yǒu jīhui wǒ yào zài qù yíci.

		有機會我要再去幾次。
		If I have the chance, I would like to go again.
7.	A:	Zhèxiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba? 這些地方你都去過了吧。
		You have gone to all those places, I suppose?
	B:	Méi dōu qùguo. Wǒ hái méi qùguo Sūzhōu. 沒都去過。我還沒去過蘇州。
		I haven't been to all of them. I still haven't been to Sūzhōu.
8.		huí guó 回國 to return to one's native country
9.		huí jiā 回家 to come/go home
10.		huíqu 回去 to go back
11.		rènao 熱鬧
12.		yǒu yìsi 有意思 to be interesting
13.		méi(yǒu) yìsi 沒(有)意思 to be uninteresting
14.		suǒyǐ (suóyì) 所以 therefore, so

Vocabulary

chū mén (chū ménr)	出門 (出門兒)	to go out, to go away from home, to go out of town
gāng	剛	only a short while ago, just
Hángzhōu	杭州	(a city in Zhèjiāng Province in the PRC, formerly spelled Hangchow)
hǎo jiǔ	好久	a long time
huí	回	to return to, to go back to
huí guó	回國	to return to one's native country
huí jiā	回家	to return home
huílai	回來	to come back
huíqu	回去	to return to one's native country, to go back
jiàn	見	to meet, to see
jīhui	機會	opportunity, chance
méi(yǒu) yìsi	沒(有)意思	to be uninteresting
néng	能	can; to be able to
péi	陪	to accompany
piàoliang	漂亮	to be beautiful
qǐng	請	to request, to invite
rènao	熱鬧	to be lively/bustling/noisy
suǒyǐ (suóyǐ)	所以 (所以)	therefore, so
Sūzhōu	蘇州	(a city in Jiāngsū Province in the PRC, formerly spelled Soochow)
wèishénme	爲什麼	why
yīnwei	因爲	because
yìqǐ	一起	together, along with
yòu	又	again
yǒu yìsi	有意思	(with completed actions) to be interesting
zài	再	again (with uncompleted actions)
huār kāile	花兒開了	the flowers have bloomed (literally, "opened")
jiānglái	將來	in the future
shōudao	收到	to receive
yǒumíngde difang	有名的地方	famous place
zuìjìn	最近	recently

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. B: Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?
 好久不見，您出門了吧？
 I haven't seen you for a long time, You have been away, I suppose?
 A: Shì a, wǒ yòu dào Guǎngzhōu qu le.
 是啊，我又到廣州去了。
 Yes, I went to **Guǎngzhōu** again.

Hǎo jiǔ, “very long”: In this phrase, the word **hǎo** means “very.” Some additional examples of this use of **hǎo** are:

hǎo dà
好大
very large
hǎo duō rén
好多人
a good many people
hǎo jǐ tiān
好幾天
quite a few days

Persons from Taiwan frequently use **hǎo**, “very,” before another **hǎo**, as in **Hǎo hǎowan!** “What fun.” and **Hǎo hǎochī!** “Delicious!” Speakers from **Běijīng** think that this repetition of **hǎo** sounds bad.

The verb **jiàn** means “to see someone” in the sense of “to visit/talk with someone.” The verb **kànjian** is used for “to see” in the sense of “to perceive an object.”

Chū mén means “to go out,” “to go away from home,” “to go out of town”; literally, “to go out the door.”

Yòu is the word for “again” which is used with completed actions. (See notes on № 6 for “again” with actions that have not been completed.)

Òu, nǐ yòu lái le!
哦，你又來了！
Oh, you have come again!
Qìshuǐ yòu méiyǒu le.
汽水又沒有了。

We are out of soda again.

Tā zuótiān méi shàng kè. Jīntiān yòu méi shàng kè.

他昨天沒上課。今天又沒上課。

Yesterday he didn't attend class. Today, again, he didn't attend class.

Notes on №2

2. B: Nín wèishénme gāng huílai, yòu qù le ne?
 您爲什麼剛回來，又去了呢？
 Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?
- A: Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.
 我這次到廣州去是因爲我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。
 This time I went to **Guǎngzhōu** because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.

Wèishénme, “why,” follows the subject in the first sentence of exchange 2. This question word usually occurs in that position. (In English, “why” always precedes the subject.)

Nǐ wèishénme yòu qù le ne?

你爲什麼又去了嗎？

(Why did you go again?)

Sometimes **wèishénme** precedes the subject of a sentence:

Wèishénme tā méi qù?	“Why didn't he go?”
爲什麼他沒去？	
Tā wèishénme méi qù?	
他爲什麼沒去？	

Gāng, “only a short while ago,” “just”: The first sentence in the exchange could also be translated as “Why, having just come back from there, did you go again?”

The adverb **gāng** is used in sentences describing something that has just been done, in other words, completed action. But notice that the marker *le* for completion is not used here. The marker *le* is added when the focus is on whether or not the action has been performed, not on when or how it was performed. **Gāng** is often used in sentences emphasizing the recentness of an action, not the fact that it was done; therefore *le* is not used.

Nǐ shì shénme shíhou lái de?

你是什麼時候來的？

When did you come here?

Gāng lái.

剛來，
I Just got here.
Nǐ mèimei zài bu zài?
你妹妹在不在？
Is your little sister here?
Tā gāng zǒu.
她剛走。
She just left.

Huí, “to return,” “to go back”: Like *chū*, “to go out,” and *jìn*, “to enter,” *huí* must be followed by either a place word or a directional ending.

huí Běijīng
回北京
to return to Běijīng
huíguó
回國
to return to one’s native country
huíjiā
回家
to return home
huílai
回來
to come back
huíqu
回去
to go back

The meaning of *huílai* is not as broad as that of the English translation “to come back,” which has two meanings: 1) to come from someplace else to the original place (“He leaves for work at eight and doesn’t come back till six.”) and 2) to come another time (“Mr. Wang isn’t in today; come back tomorrow.”) *Huílai* means “to return to a particular place.” To say “to come another time” in Chinese, you would use an adverb meaning “again” and the verb *lái*. For example:

Wáng Xiānsheng jīntiān bú zài, qǐng nǐ míngtiān zài lái.
王先生今天不在，請你明天來。
Mr. Wang isn’t in today; please come back tomorrow.

Nèige rén zuótiān yòu lái zhǎo nǐ, nǐ bú zài.

那個人昨天又來找你，你不在。

That guy came back looking for you yesterday, but you were out.

Ne: Because of the question word *wèishénme*, “why,” the first sentence in exchange 2 is clearly a question. The marker **ne** is not needed to indicate a question, but does give an added ring of inquisitiveness to the sentence. Questions ending in **ne** often seem to be asking for definite answers.

Yīnwei, “because”: Here are some simpler sentences containing *yīnwei*:

Nǐ wèishénme méi lái?

你為什麼沒來？

Why didn't you come?

Yīnwei wǒ hěn máng.

因為我很忙。

Because I was very busy.

Nǐ wèishénme lái wǎn le?

你為什麼來晚了？

Why did you come late?

Yīnwei wǒ zǒucuò le.

因為我走錯了。

Because I made a wrong turn.

Nǐ wèishénme yòu qù le?

你為什麼又去了？

Why did you go again?

Yīnwei wǒde péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.

因為我的朋友從香港來。

Because my friend was coming from Hong Kong.

The word order in the second sentence of exchange 2 may be described in terms of a pattern:

SENTENCE	<i>shì yīnwei</i>	SENTENCE
	因為	
<i>Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù</i>		<i>wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.</i>
我這次到廣州去		我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。

The phrase **hěn hǎode péngyou** contains the marker of modification **-de**. The modifying phrase AD-VERB + ADJECTIVAL VERB (e.g., **zuì xiǎo, tài gāo**) is followed by **-de**. Therefore **hǎo péngyou** does not need **-de**, but **hěn hǎode péngyou** does.

The verb **yǒu** is translated in the past tense in the second sentence of this exchange: “I HAD a . . . friend coming.” Notice that there is no completed-action marker in the sentence. **Yǒu** cannot be used with a completed-action marker because it is a STATE verb, not an action verb. (See notes on Nos. 7-8 in BIO, Unit 8, and on № 4 in this unit.)

Notes on №3

3. A: **Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.**
 我們有一年沒見了。
 We had not seen each other for a year.
- A: **Tā qǐng wo péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.**
 她請我陪她一起去旅行。
 She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.

Yǒu yìnián méi: To state the period of time within which something has not happened, place the amount of time in front of the negative and the verb. The verb **yǒu** may be placed in front of the amount of time.

Wǒmen (yǒu) sānnián méi jiàn le.

我們有三年沒見了。

(as for us there have been 3 years haven't met)

“We haven't seen each other for three years.”

In this example, new-situation **le** might be translated as “as of now.”

When you are talking about a period of time within which something will not happen, the same pattern is used, but **yǒu** may NOT be added:

Wǒ liǎngtiān bù chīfàn.

我兩天不吃飯。

“I'm not going to eat for two days.”

The verb **qǐng**, which you have already learned as “please,” means “to request [that a person do something]” or “to invite.” Normally, when you **qǐng** someone to take a trip or to go out, you are saying that you will pay all expenses.

Notes on №4

4. A: **Sānge yuè yǐqián wǒ zài Guǎngzhōu, nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào néng bù néng lái.**
 三個月以前我在廣州，那個時候她還不知道能不能來。
 Three months ago, when I was in **Guǎngzhōu**, she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.

Yǐqián, “ago”: You have already seen **yǐqián** used after a phrase to mean “before.”

Wǒ shàng bān yǐqián, wǒ mǎi diǎnr chīde.

我上班以前，我買點兒吃的。

Before I start work, I will buy something to eat.

In № 4, *yǐqián* is used after an amount of time to mean “ago.”

Liǎngnián yǐqián, wǒ méiyǒu qìchē.

兩年以前，我沒有汽車。

Two years ago, I didn't have a car.

Néng, “can,” “to be able to,” “to be capable of”: The most general word in Chinese for “to be able to” is *néng*. The meanings of *néng* and *kéyǐ* “to be permitted by someone” or “permissible according to some rules or conventions,” overlap.

Nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào: The negative is *bù*, even though the sentence refers to the past. The negative *méi* cannot be used here because it is the negative of completed action. The verb *zhīdào*, like the verb you and adjectival verbs such as *hǎo*, is a state verb and cannot be thought of as completed.

Since the negative of a state verb is the same in the present and past tenses, the intended time must be discovered from the context. One reason for using *nèige shíhou* in № 4 is to make the time reference very clear.

STATE VERBS include all adjectival verbs, auxiliary verbs, and a few other verbs. Here are some examples:

Adjectival Verbs		Auxiliaries		Others	
dà	大	huì	會	shì	是
xiǎo	小	kéyǐ	可以	zài	在
guì	貴	néng	能	yǒu	有
piányi	便宜	děi	得	xìng	姓
kuài	快	bú bì	不必	jiào	叫
màn	慢	yào	要	zhīdào	知道
duō	多	xiǎng	想	xǐhuan	喜歡
shǎo	少				
gāoxìng	高興				

Yījiǔsānyīnián dōngxi dōu bù guì.

一九三一年東西都不貴。

In 1931, everything was inexpensive.

Wǒ zài Déguó shíhou bú huì shuō Déguó huà.

我在德國時候不會說德

When I was in Germany, I couldn't speak German.

Wǒ yǐqián bù xǐhuan niàn shū.

我以前不喜歡念書。

Before, I didn't like to study.

Bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái, “didn't know if she would be able to come”: The object of the verb zhīdào is a choice-type question, néng bu néng lái. Here are more examples of this usage:

Wǒ bù zhīdào hái yǒu méiyǒu.

我不知道還有沒有。

I don't know if there are any left.

Nǐ wènwen tā mǎile méiyǒu.

你問問他買了沒有。

Ask him if he bought it.

Wǒ xiǎng zhīdào tāmen lái bu lái.

我想知道他們來不來。

I would like to know if they are coming or not.

English-speaking students of Chinese are often tempted to translate “if” as *rúguǒ* or *yàoshi*; to do so, however, is wrong. The following rule may help you remember to use a choice-type question: Whenever the “if” in an English sentence means “whether,” use a choice-type question in Chinese. For example, “I would like to know if they are coming” means “I would like to know whether they are coming”; therefore, in Chinese, you would use a choice-type question as the object of the verb *zhīdào*.

Notes on №5

5. B: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?

你們都去過什麼地方？

What places did you go to?

A: Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, dōu qù le. Hángzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.

南京，上海，杭州，蘇州，都去了。杭州真是漂亮。

We went to Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, and Sūzhōu. Hángzhōu is really beautiful.

Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang? is ambiguous. It could mean either “What places did all of you go to?” or “What are all the places that you went to?”

You already know that *dōu* may refer to an object when that object precedes the verb, in topic position. (See the second sentence in exchange 5.)

In this first sentence of the exchange, *dōu* is referring to an object which occurs after the verb. When an object includes a question word, it is not placed before *dōu* in the sentence.

Tā dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?

他都去過什麼地方？

What are all the places that he went to?

Tā dōu niànguo shénme shū?

他都念過什麼書？

What are all the books that she has read?

Tā dōu mǎiguò shénme dōngxi?

他都買過什麼東西？

What are all the things that he bought ?

The *shi* in *Hángzhōu zhēn shi piàoliang* has been added for emphasis. *Shi* is not required before adjectival verbs.

Notes on №6

6. A: Yǒu jīhuì wǒ yào zài qù yíci.

有機會我要再去幾次。

If I have the chance, I would like to go again.

The adverb *zài* means “again” in talking about actions that have not been completed. (This adverb was translated previously in your text as “then” in commands.)

Míngtiān zài lái ba!

明天再來吧！

Come again tomorrow.

Qǐng ni zài shuō yíci.

請你再說一次。

Please say it again.

Yíci means “one occurrence of going,” or “one trip,” in this sentence. (The English translation does not include an equivalent of *yíci*.)

Notes on №7

7. A: Zhèxiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba?

這些地方你都去過了吧。

You have gone to all those places, I suppose?

B: Méi dōu qùguo. Wǒ hái méi qùguo Sūzhōu.

沒都去過。我還沒去過蘇州。

I haven't been to all of them. I still haven't been to *Sūzhōu*.

Méi dōu, “not all”: In the second sentence of exchange 7, the negative *méi* precedes the adverb *dōu*. Placing a negative before *dōu* instead of after it changes the meaning of the phrase. Compare the sentences below:

Tāmen dōu bù lái.

他們都不來。
They are all not coming. (All of them are not coming.)
Tāmen bù dōu lái.
他們不都來。
Not all of them are coming.
Wǒ dōu méi qùguo.
我都沒去過。
I haven't been to any of them.
Wǒ méi dōu qùguo.
我沒都去過。
I haven't been to all of them.

Notes on Additional Vocabulary

8.	huí guó
	回國
	to return to one's native country
9.	huí jiā
	回家
	to come/go home
10.	huíqu
	回去
	to go back
11.	rènao
	熱鬧
12.	yǒu yìsi
	有意思
	to be interesting
13.	méi(yǒu) yìsi
	沒(有)意思
	to be uninteresting
14.	suǒyǐ (suóyì)
	所以
	therefore, so

Suǒyǐ (also pronounced suóyì) is the word “therefore,” “so.”

Wǒ hěn máng, suóyǐ méi qù.

我很忙，所以沒去。

I was very busy, so I didn't go.

In Chinese sentences expressing cause and result, the pattern *yīnwei... suóyǐ...* is preferred. English speakers often find difficulty in using this pattern because it sounds unnatural in English to say “Because I was very busy, so I didn't go.” In English, either “because” or “so” would be omitted; but, in Chinese, both *yīnwei* and *suóyǐ* are often retained.

Yīnwei wǒ hěn máng, suóyǐ méi qù.

因為我很忙，所以沒去。

I was very busy, so I didn't go. (OR “Because I was very busy, I didn't go.”)

Yīnwei tā shì hǎo xuésheng, suóyǐ lǎoshī dōu xǐhuan tā.

因為他是好學生，所以老師都喜歡他。

Because he is a good student, all the teachers like him.

Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu hùzhào, suóyǐ xiànzài wǒ hái bù néng líkāi.

因為我沒有護照，所以現在我還不能離開。

I don't have a passport, so I can't leave yet. (OR “Because I don't have a passport, I can't leave yet.”)

Yīnwei wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qù, suóyǐ wǒ yào xué Zhōngwén.

因為我要到中國去，所以我要學中文。

I have to learn Chinese because I'm going to go to China.

Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu chē, suóyǐ wǒ bù néng zhù de lí xuéxiào tài yuǎn.

因為我沒有車，所以我不能住的離學校太遠。

I don't have a car, so I can't live too far away from school. (OR “Because I don't have a car, I can't live too far away from school.”)

Notice that *suóyǐ* always precedes the subject of the sentence.

Suóyǐ may also mean “that's why...”: “That's why you came here by plane.” *Suóyǐ nǐ shì zuò fēijī lái de*. When used this way, the word *suóyǐ* is stressed.

Drills

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā chū mén le.

他出门了。

He has gone out.

Tā yòu chū mén le ma?

他又出门了吗。

Has he gone out again?

2. Tā dào Zhōngguó qù le.

他到中国去了。

He went to China.

Tā yòu dào Zhōngguó qù le ma?

他又到中国去了吗。

He went to China again?

3. Tā niàn shū le.

他念书了。

He/she read the book.

Tā yòu niàn shū le ma?

他又念书了吗。

He/she read the book again?

4. Tā shàngqu le.

他上去了。

He/she went up.

Tā yòu shàngqu le ma?

他又上去了吗。

He/she went up again?

5. Tā dào péngyou jiā qù le.

他到朋友家去了。

He/she went to his/her friend.

Tā yòu dào péngyou jiā qù le ma?

他又到朋友家去了吗。

He/she went to his/her friend again?

6. Tā lái le.

他来了。

He/she came.

Tā yòu lái le ma?

他又来了吗。

He/she came again?

7. Tā huíqu le.

他回去了。

He /she returned.

Tā yòu huíqu le ma?

他又回去了吗。

He /she returned again?

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ yào kàn yíge péngyou.

我要看一个朋友。

I want to see a friend.

Wǒ zhècì qù shì yào kàn yíge péngyou.

我这次去是要看一个朋友。

The reason I'm going this time is [that] I want to see a friend.

2. Wǒ yào mǎi yíběn Zhōngguó zìdiǎn.

我要买一本中国字典。

I want to buy a Chinese dictionary.

Wǒ zhècì qù shì yào mǎi yíběn Zhōngguó zìdiǎn.

我这次去是要买一本中国字典。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she wants to buy a Chinese dictionary.

3. Tā xiǎng mǎi yíge huāpíng.

他/他想买一个花瓶。

He/she would like to buy a vase.

Tā zhècì qù shì xiǎng mǎi yíge huāpíng.

他/他这次去是想买一个花瓶。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she would like to buy a vase.

4. Tā yào kànkàn mǔqīn.

他/他要看看母亲。

He/she wants to see his/her mother.

Tā zhècì qù shì yào kànkàn mǔqīn.

他/他这次去是要看看母亲。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she wants to see his/her mother.

5. Tā dāsuan qù huàn yídiǎn qián.

他/他打算去换一点钱。

He/she intends to change some money.

Tā zhèicì qù shì dǎsuan qù huàn yìdiǎn qián.

他/他这次去是打算去换一点钱。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she intends to change some money.

6. Tā xiǎng xué Zhōngwén.

他/他想学中文。

He/she would like to study Chinese.

Tā zhèicì qù shì xiǎng xué Zhōngwén.

他/他这次去是想学中文。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she would like to study Chinese.

7. Tā dǎsuan mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxi.

他/他打算买一点东西。

He/she intends to buy some things.

Tā zhèicì qù shì dǎsuan mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxi.

他/他这次去是打算买一点东西。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she intends to buy some things.

Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù le.
我有一年没去了。
I haven't gone for a year.

Cue kànjian ta
看见他/她

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kànjian ta le.
我有一年没看见他/她了。
I haven't seen him for a year.

2. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kànjian ta le.
我有一年没看见他/她了。
I haven't seen him for a year.

Cue dào Shànghǎi qù
到上海去
to Shànghǎi

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào Shànghǎi qù le.
我有一年没到上海去了。
I haven't gone for a year to Shànghǎi.

3. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào Shànghǎi qù le.
我有一年没到上海去了。
I haven't gone for a year to Shànghǎi.

Cue kàn Zhongwén bào
看中文报
read a Chinese newspaper

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kàn Zhongwén bào le.
我有一年没看中文报了。
I haven't read a Chinese newspaper for a year.

4. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kàn Zhongwén bào le.

我有一年没看中文报了。

I haven't read a Chinese newspaper for a year.

Cue

qù kàn ta

去看他/她

see him/her

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù kàn ta le.

我有一年没去看他/她了。

I haven't visited him/her for a year.

5. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù kàn ta le.

我有一年没去看他/她了。

I haven't visited him/her for a year.

Cue

zuò fēijī

坐飞机

take a plane

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi zuò fēijī le.

我有一年没坐飞机了。

I haven't taken a plane for a year.

6. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi zuò fēijī le.

我有一年没坐飞机了。

I haven't taken a plane for a year.

Cue

dào zhèr lái

到这儿来

Come here

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào zhèr lái le.

我有一年没到这儿来了。

I haven't come here for a year.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ gēge qǐng wǒ péi ta qù lǚxíng.
我哥哥请我陪他/他去旅行。
My older brother asked me to accompany him [in his] travels.

Wǒ děi péi wǒ gēge qù lǚxíng.
我得陪我哥哥去旅行。
I must accompany my older brother [in his] travels.

2. Wǒ jiějie qǐng wǒ péi ta qù mǎi dōngxi.
我姐姐请我陪他/他去买东西。
My older sister asked me to accompany her go shopping.

Wǒ děi péi wǒ jiějie qù mǎi dōngxi.
我得陪我姐姐去买东西。
I must accompany my older sister to go shopping.

3. Wǒ àiren qǐng wǒ péi ta qù kàn péngyou.
我爱人请我陪他/他去看朋友。
My spouse asked me to accompany her to see friends.

Wǒ děi péi wǒ àiren qù kàn péngyou.
我得陪我爱人去看朋友。
I must accompany her to see friends.

4. Zhāng Tóngzhì qǐng wǒ péi ta dào Běijīng qù.
张同志请我陪他/他到北京去。
Comrade Zhāng asked me to accompany him/her to Běijīng.

Wǒ děi péi Zhāng Tóngzhì dào Běijīng qù.
我得陪张同志到北京去。
I must accompany him/her to Běijīng.

5. Lǐ Tóngzhì qǐng wǒ péi ta dào bówùguǎn qù.
李同志请我陪他/他到博物馆去。
Comrade Lǐ asked me to accompany him/her to the museum.

Wǒ děi péi Lǐ Tóngzhì dào bówùguǎn qù.

我得陪李同志到博物馆去。

I must accompany him/her to the museum.

6. Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā qù mǎi shū.

他/他请我陪他/他去买书。

He/she asked me to accompany him/her to buy books.

Wǒ děi péi tā qù mǎi shū.

我得陪他/他去买书。

I must accompany him/her to buy books.

7. Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā qù huàn qiǎn.

他/他请我陪他/他去换钱。

He/she asked me to accompany him/her to change money.

Wǒ děi péi tā qù huàn qiǎn.

我得陪他/他去换钱。

I must accompany him/her to change money.

Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道能不能来。
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she would be able to come.

Cue shénme shíhou
什么时候
when

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào shénme shíhou lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道什么时候来。
At that time he/she did not yet know what time to come.

2. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào shénme shíhou lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道什么时候来。
At that time he/she did not yet know when to come.

Cue xīngqījǐ
星期几
what day of the/she week

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào xīngqījǐ lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道星期几来。
At that time he/she did not yet know what day of the/she week to come.

3. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào xīngqījǐ lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道星期几来。
At that time he/she did not yet know what day of the week to come.

Cue kěyǐ bu kěyǐ
可以不可以
can?

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào kěyǐ bu kěyǐ lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道可以不可以来。
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she could come.

4. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào kéyǐ bu keyǐ lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道可以不可以来。
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she could come.

Cue jǐyuè
几月
which month

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐyuè lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道几月来。
At that time he/she did not yet know which month to come.

5. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐyuè lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道几月来。
At that time he/she did not yet know which month to come.

Cue néng bu néng
能不能
can?

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道能不能来。
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she would be able to come.

6. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道能不能来。
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she would be able to come.

Cue jǐhào
几号
which date

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐhào lái.
他/他那个时候还不知道几号来。
At that time he/she did not yet know which date to come.

Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?
你们都去过什么地方？
What places did you go to?

Cue Shànghǎi, Nánjīng
上海，南京
Shànghǎi, Nánjīng

Shànghǎi, Nánjīng wǒmen dōu qù le.
上海，南京我们都去过。
We went to both Shànghǎi and Nánjīng.

2. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?
你们都去过什么地方？
What places did you go to?

Cue nǐ shuōde
你说的
What you said

Nǐ shuōde nàixiē dìfang wǒmen dōu qù le.
你说的那些地方都去了。
We've been to all those places you mentioned.

3. Nǐmen dōu niànguo shénme?
你们都念过什么？
What did you all study?

Cue zhèngzhìxué, jīngjìxué
政治学，经济学
political science, economics

Zhèngzhìxué, jīngjìxué wǒmen dōu niàn le.
政治学，经济学我们都念了。
Political science, economics, we studied them both.

4. Nǐmen dōu mǎi shénme le?

你们都买什么了？

What did you buy?

Cue

zhuōzi, pánziwǎn

桌子，盘子碗

table, dishes

Zhuōzi, pánziwǎn wǒmen dōu mǎi le.

桌子，盘子碗你们都买了。

Table, dishes, we bought both of them.

5. Nǐmen zuótiān dōu mǎi shénme le?

你们昨天都买什么了？

What did you buy Yesterday?

Cue

shū, zázhì

书，杂志

book, magazine

Shū, zázhì wǒmen dōu mǎi le.

书，杂志我们都买了。

Book, magazine, we bought both of them.

6. Nǐmen dōu yào shénme yánsède?

你们都要什么颜色的？

What colour do you want?

Cue

lán-de, hóng-de

蓝的，红的

blue, red

Lán-de, hóng-de wǒmen dōu yào.

蓝的，红的我们都要。

The blue ones, the red ones, we both want them.

7. Nǐmen jīntiān dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?

你们今天都去过什么地方？

At what place did you go today?

Cue

bówùguǎn, zhǎnlǎnguǎn

博物馆，展览馆

museum, exhibition Gallery

Bówùguǎn, zhǎnlǎnguǎn wǒmen dōu qù le.

博物馆，展览馆我们都去了。

Museum, exhibition Gallery, we went to both.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Tāmen dōu lái le ma?
他/他们都来了吗?
Did they all come?

Cue měi dōu
美都
not all

Tāmen měi dōu lái.
他/他们没都来。
Not all of them came.

2. Tāmen dōu qù le ma?
他/他们都去了吗?
Did they all go?

Cue dōu méi
都没
none

Tāmen dōu méi qù.
他/他们都没去。
None of them did go.

3. Tāmen dōu zǒu le ma?
他/他们都走了吗?
Did they all walk?

Cue méi dōu
美都
not all

Tāmen méi dōu zǒu.
他/他们没都走。
Not all of them walked.

4. Tāmen dōu mǎi le ma?
他/他们都买了吗?
Did they all buy?

Cue dōu méi
都没
none

Tāmen dōu méi mǎi.
他/他们都没买。
None of them bought.

5. Tāmen dōu mài Zhōngguo shū ma?
他/他们都卖中国书吗?
Did they all buy Chinese books?

Cue bù dōu
不都
not all

Tāmen bù dōu mài Zhōngguo shū.
他/他们不都卖中国书。
Not all of them bought Chinese books.

6. Shànghǎi, Běijīng, Nánjīng tāmen dōu qùguo le ma?
上海，北京，南京他/他们都去过了吗?
Shànghǎi, Běijīng, Nánjīng, did they ever go there?

Cue méi dōu
美都
not all

Tāmen méi dōu qùguo.
他/他们没都去过。
Not all of them ever went.

7. Tāmen dōu lái guo ma?
他/他们都来过吗?
Did they all ever go?

Cue

dōu méi

都没

none

Tāmen dōu méi lái guo.

他/他们都没来过。

None of them ever went.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ míngtiān yào zài qù yíci.

我明天要再去一次。

Tomorrow I want to go again.

Wǒ zuótiān yòu qù le yíci.

我昨天又去了一次。

Yesterday I went again.

2. Tā hòutiān yào zài lái yíci.

他/他后天要再来一次。

He/she wants to come again the day after tomorrow.

Tā qiántiān yòu lái le yíci.

他/他前天又来了一次。

He/he came again the day before yesterday.

3. Tā míngnián yào zài niàn yíci.

他/他明年要再念一次。

He/she is going to study again next year.

Tā qùnián yòu niàn le yíci.

他/他去年又念了一次。

He/he read it again last year.

4. Wǒ xiàge yuè yào zài kàn yíci.

我下个月要再看一次。

I'm going to watch it again next month.

Wǒ shàngge yuè yòu kàn le yíci.

我上个月又看了一次。

I watched it again last month.

5. Tā xiàge xīngqī yào zài zuò yíci.

他/他下个星期要再做一次。

He/he is going to do it again next week.

Tā shàngge xīngqī yòu zuòle yíci.

他/他上个星期又做了一次。

He/he did it again last week.

6. Wǒ xiàwǔ yào zài xué yíci.

我下午要再学一次。

I'm going to learn it again this afternoon.

Wǒ shàngwǔ yòu xuéle yíci.

我上午又学了一次。

I learned it again in the morning.

7. Tā xiàge Xīngqīyī yào zài kāi yíci.

他/他下个星期一要再开一次。

He/he is going to drive again next Monday.

Tā shàngge Xīngqīyī yòu kāile yíci.

他/他上个星期一又开了一次。

He/he drove again last Monday.

Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?
你们都去过什么地方？
What places did you go to?

Cue zhèige dìfang
这个地方
this place

Nǐmen dōu qùguo zhèige dìfang ma?
你们都去过这个地方吗？
Did all of you ever go to this place?

2. Nǐmen dōu mǎi shénme le?
你们都买什么了？
What did you buy?

Cue shū
书
book

Nǐmen dōu mǎi shū le ma?
你们都买书了吗？
Did you all buy books?

3. Nǐmen dōu yào shénme?
你们都要什么？
What do you want?

Cue mǎi lán de
买蓝的
buy blue one

Nǐmen dōu yào mǎi lán de ma?
你们都要买懒得吗？
Do you all want to buy blue one?

4. Nǐmen dōu zhùguo shénme fàndiàn?

你们都住过什么饭店？

What hotels have you stayed in?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

那个饭店

that store

Nǐmen dōu zhùguo nèige fàndiàn ma?

你们都住过那个饭店吗？

Did you all ever stay at that hotel?

5. Nǐmen dōu niànguo shénme?

你们都年过什么？

What have you all been doing?

Cue

zhèngzhixué

政治学

political Science

Nǐmen dōu niànguo zhèngzhixué ma?

你们念过政治学吗？

Did you all study political science?

6. Nǐmen dōu kàn shénme diànyǐng le?

你们都看什么电影了？

What film did you all watch?

Cue

zhèige diànyǐng

这个电影

this movie

Nǐmen dōu kàn zhèige diànyǐng le ma?

你们都看这个电影了吗？

Did you all watch that movie?

7. Nǐmen dōu xìng shénme?

你们都姓什么？

What is your name?

Cue

Lǐ

李

Lǐ

Nǐmen dōu xìng Lǐ ma?

你们都姓李吗？

Are you all are named Lǐ?

Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā yòu qù le.
他/他又去了。
He's gone again.

Cue huílai
回来
come back

Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù le ne?
他/他为什么刚回来又去了呢?
Why did he go again when he had just come back?

2. Tā yòu lái le.
他/他又来了。
Here he/he is again.

Cue huíqu
回去
go back

Tā wèishénme gāng huíqu yòu lái le ne?
他/他为什么刚回去又来了呢。
Why did he/he just go back and come again.

3. Tā yòu zǒu le.
他/他又走了。
He/she walk again.

Cue huílai
回来
come back

Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu zǒu le ne?
他/他为什么刚回来有走了呢?
Why did he/he just come back and leave?

4. Tā yòu huíqu le.
他/他又回去了。
He/he went back again.

Cue lái
来
come

Tā wèishénme gāng lái yòu huíqu le ne?
他/他为什么刚来又回去了呢？
Why did he/he just come and then go back?

5. Tā yòu huílai le.
他/他又回来了。
He/he came back again.

Cue qù
去
go

Tā wèishénme gāng qù yòu huílai le ne?
他/他为什么刚去又回来了呢？
Why did he/he just go and come back again?

6. Tā yòu huílai le.
他/他又回来了。
He/he is back again.

Cue zǒu
走
walk

Tā wèishénme gāng zǒu yòu huílai le ne?
他/他为什么刚走又回来了呢？
Why did he/he just leave and come back again?

7. Tā yòu qù le.
他/他又去了。
He/he went again.

Cue

huílai

回来

come back

Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù le ne?

他/他为什么刚回来又去了呢？

Why did he/he just come back and go again?

